
必修 1 第一单元

Reading 阅读

ANNE'S BEST FRIEND

Do you want a friend whom you could tell everything to, like your deepest feelings and thoughts? Or are you afraid that your friend would laugh at you, or would not understand what you are going through? Anne Frank wanted the first kind, so she made her diary her best friend.

安妮最好的朋友

你想不想有一位无话不谈能推心置腹的朋友？或者你会不会担心你的朋友会嘲笑你，会不理解你目前的困境呢？安妮·弗兰克想要的是第一种类型的朋友，所以她把的日记视为自己最好的朋友。

Anne lived in Amsterdam in the Netherlands during World War II. Her family was Jewish so they had to hide or they would be caught by the German Nazis. She and her family hid away for two years before they were discovered. During that time the only true friend was her diary. She said, "I don't want to set down a series of facts in a diary as most people do, but I want this diary itself to be my friend, and I shall call my friend Kitty." Now read how she felt after being in the hiding place since July 1942.

在第二次世界大战期间，安妮住在荷兰的阿姆斯特丹。她一家人都是犹太人，所以他们不得不躲藏起来，否则就会被德国的纳粹分子抓去。她和她的家人躲藏了 25 个月之后才被发现。在那段时期，她的日记成了她唯一忠实的朋友。她说：“我不愿像大多数人那样在日记中记流水账。我要把我的日记当作自己的朋友，我把我的这个朋友叫做基蒂。”现在，来看看安妮自 1942 年 7 月起躲进藏身处后的那种心情吧。

Thursday 15, June, 1944

Dear kitty,

I wonder if it's because I haven't been able to be outdoors for so long that I've grown so crazy about everything to do with nature. I can well remember that there was a time when a deep blue sky, the song of the birds, moonlight and flowers could never have kept me spellbound. That's changed since I was here.

...For example, when it was so warm, I stayed awake on purpose until half past eleven one evening in order to have a good look at the moon for once by myself. But as the moon gave far too much light, I didn't dare open a window. Another time some months ago, I happened to be upstairs one evening when the window was open. I didn't go downstairs until the window had to be shut. The dark, rainy evening, the wind, the thundering clouds held me entirely in their power; it was the first time in a year and a half that I'd seen the night face to face...

...Sadly...I am only able to look at nature through dirty curtains hanging before very dusty windows. It's no pleasure looking through these any longer because nature is one thing that really must be experienced.

Yours,

Anne

2018 年 6 月 15 日，星期四

亲爱的基蒂：

我不知道这是不是因为太久无法出门的缘故，我变得对一切与大自然有关的事物都无比狂热。我记得非常清楚，以前，湛蓝的天空、鸟儿的歌唱、月光和鲜花，从未令我心迷神往过。自从我来到这里之后，这一切都变了。

……比如说，有一天晚上天气很暖和，我故意熬到晚上 11 点半都不睡觉，为的就是能独自好好地看看月亮。但是因为月光太亮了，我都不敢打开窗户。还有一次，就在五个月以前的一个晚上，我碰巧在楼上，窗户是开着的，我一直呆到非关窗不可的时候才下楼去。漆黑的雨夜，刮着大风，电闪雷鸣，乌云滚滚，我完全被这种景象镇住了。这是我一年半以来第一次亲眼目睹的夜晚……

……不幸的是……我只能透过那满是灰尘的窗帘下那脏兮兮的窗户看看大自然。只能隔着窗户看那大自然实在没意思，因为大自然是需要真正体验的东西。

你的安妮

Using Language 语言运用

Reading and listening 读与听

1 Read the letter that Lisa wrote to Miss Wang of Radio for Teenagers and predict what Miss Wang will say. After listening, check and discuss her advice.

Dear Miss Wang,

I am having some trouble with my classmates at the moment. I'm getting along well with a boy in my class. We often do homework together and we enjoy helping each other. We have become really good friends. But other students have started gossiping. They say that this boy and I have fallen in love. This has made me angry. I don't want to end the friendship, but I hate others gossiping. What should I do?

Yours,

Lisa

1 读读琳达为青少年写给电台王小姐的这封信，然后王小姐可能会怎么说。听完录音之后，核对并讨论她的建议。

亲爱的王小姐：

现在我同班上的同学有些麻烦事。我跟我们班里的一位男同学一直相处的很好。我们常常一起做家庭作业，而且很乐意互相帮助。我们成了真正好朋友。可是，其他同学却在背后议论起来，他们说我和这位男同学在谈恋爱，这使我很生气。我不想中断这段友谊，但是，我又讨厌人家背后说闲话。我该怎么办呢？

你的莉萨

Reading and writing 读与写

Miss Wang has received a letter from Xiaodong. He is also asking for some advice. Read the letter on the right carefully and help Miss Wang answer it.

王小姐收到小冬的一封信。小冬是要征求一些意见。仔细阅读右边的信，然后帮王小姐回复。

Dear Miss Wang,

I'm a student from Huzhou Senior High School. I have a problem. I'm not very good at

communicating with people. Although I try to talk to my classmates, I still find it hard to make good friends with them. So I feel quite lonely sometimes. I do want to change this situation, but I don't know how. I would be grateful if you could give me some advice.

Yours,

Xiaodong

亲爱的王小姐：

我是湖州高中的一名学生，我有一个难题，我不大善于与人们交际。虽然我试着和班上的同学交谈，但是，我还是很难跟他们成为好朋友。因此，有时候我感到十分的孤独。我确实想改变这种现状，但是我却不知道怎么办。如果您能给我提些建议，我会非常感谢的。

你的小东

2 Decide which are the best ideas and put them into an order. Then write down your advice and explain how it will help. Each idea can make one paragraph. The following sample and the expressions may help you

Dear Xiaodong,

I'm sorry you are having trouble in making friends. However, the situation is easy to change if you follow my advice. Here are some tips to help you.

First, why not...?

If you do this,...

Secondly, you could / can ...

Then / That way, ...

Thirdly, it would be a good idea if ...

By doing this, ...

I hope you will find these ideas useful.

Yours

Miss Wang

2 决定哪些是最好并把它们按顺序组织起来。然后把你的建议写出来，并解释它为什么会有所帮助。每个想法可以自成一个段落。下面的例子和表达可能对你有所帮助。

亲爱的小冬：

很遗憾听说你在交朋友的过程中遇到了困难。但是，如果你听听我的建议，这种情况是很容易改变的。这些建议会对你有所帮助。

第一，为什么不……呢？

如果你这样做……

第二，你可以……

这样的话……

第三，如果……那将是个不错的主意。

通过做……

我希望你会发现这些想法对你有所帮助。

你的王小姐

LEARNING TIP 学习建议

It's a good habit for you to keep a diary. It can help you remember past events. You can express your feelings and thoughts in it. It will help you improve your English if you write your diary in English. Why not have a try?

写日记对你来说是一个好习惯。它可以帮你记住一些过去发生的事件。你还可以在日记中表达你的情感和思想。如果你用英语写日记的话,还可以帮助你提高英语水平。为什么不试一试呢?

第二单元

Reading 阅读

THE ROAD TO MODERN ENGLISH

At the end of the 16th century, about five to seven million people spoke English. Nearly all of them lived in England. Later in the next century, people from England made voyages to conquer other parts of the world and because of that, English began to be spoken in many other countries. Today, more people speak English as their first, second or foreign language than ever before.

通向现代英语之路

在 16 世纪末, 大约有五至七百万人讲英语。几乎所有这些讲英语的人都住在英格兰。在其后的一个世纪中, 英格兰人为征服世界航海到了世界其他一些地方, 结果世界的其他地方的人们也开始说英语了。今天, 把英语作为自己的第一语言、第二语言或外语来使用的人比以往任何时候都多。

Native English speakers can understand each other even if they don't speak the same kind of English. Look at this example:

British Betty: Would you like to see my flat?

American Amy: Yes, I'd like to come up to your apartment.

以英语作为母语的人, 即使他们所讲不是同一种英语, 他们也能彼此听懂。请看看这个例子: 英国人贝蒂: 来看看我的公寓吗?

美国人艾米: 好的, 我来看看你的公寓吧。

So why has English changed over time? Actually all languages change and develop when cultures meet and communicate with each other. At first the English spoken in England between about AD 450 and 1150 was very different from the English spoken today. It was based more on German than the English we speak at present. Then gradually between about AD 800 and 1150, English became less like German because those who ruled England spoken first Danish and later French. These new settlers enriched the English language and especially its vocabulary. So by the 1600's Shakespeare was able to make use of a wider vocabulary than ever before. In 1620 some British settlers moved to America. Later in the 18th century some British people were taken to Australia too. English began to be spoken in both countries.

那么, 随着时间的推移英语为什么发生了变化呢? 实际上, 当不同文化相互交流渗透时, 所有的语言都会有所发展和变化。开始, 英格兰人在大约公元 450 年到 1150 年之间所说的英语与我们今天所说的英语很不一样。当时的英语更多的是以德语为基础的, 不像我们现在说的英语。后来, 大约在公元 800 年至 1150 年之间, 英语慢慢变得不那么像德语, 因为统治英格兰的那

些人开始是说丹麦语，后来说法语。这些新来的定居者丰富了英语语言，尤其是丰富了英语词汇。所以到 17 世纪初的时候，莎士比亚能够得以使用比以往任何时候都丰富的词汇。1620 年一些英国定居者来到了美洲，后来到了 18 世纪的时候，一些英国人还被带到了澳大利亚。英语也就开始在这两个国家使用。

Finally by the 19th century the language was settled. At that time two big changes in English spelling happened: first Samuel Johnson wrote his dictionary and later Noah Webster wrote The American Dictionary of the English Language. The latter gave a separate identity to American English spelling. 最后到 19 世纪的时候，英语这种语言就变得稳定了。当时，英语的拼写发生了两个很大的变化：先是塞缪尔·约翰逊编写了他的英语词典，后是诺亚·韦伯斯特出版了《美国英语词典》。后者使得美式英语的拼写有了其独特的个性。

English now is also spoken as a foreign or second language in South Asia. For example, India has a very large number of fluent English speakers because Britain ruled India from 1765 to 1947. During that time English became the language for government and education. English is also spoken in Singapore and Malaysia and countries in Africa such as South Africa. Today the number of people learning English in China is increasing rapidly. In fact, China may have the largest number of English learners. Will Chinese English develop its own identity? Only time will tell.

现在英语在南亚地区也被作为外语或第二语言使用。比如，印度就有很多人英语说得很流利，因为在 1765 年到 1947 年之间英国统治着印度。在此期间，英语成了印度政府和教育所用的语言。在新加坡和马来西亚以及像非洲的南非，人们现在也说英语。当今，在中国学英语的人数正在快速增加，事实上，中国可能是学英语人数最多的国家。中国式英语是否也能发展成一种具有自己独特个性的语言？这还有待时间去证明。

Using Language 语言运用

STANDARD ENGLISH AND DIALECTS

What is standard English? Is it spoken in Britain, the US, Canada, Australia, India and New Zealand? Believe it or not, there is no such thing as standard English. Many people believe the English spoken on TV and the radio is standard English. This is because in the early days of radio, those who reported the news were expected to speak excellent English. However, on TV and the radio you will hear differences in the way people speak.

When people use words and expressions different from “standard language”, it is called a dialect. American English has many dialects, especially the midwestern, southern, African American and Spanish dialects. Even in some parts of the USA, two people from neighbouring towns speak a little differently. American English has so many dialects because people have come from all over the world.

Geography also plays a part in making dialects. Some people who live in the mountains of the eastern USA speak with an older kind of English dialect. When Americans moved from one place to another, they took their dialects with them. So people from the mountains in the southeastern USA speak with almost the same dialect as people in the northwestern USA. The USA is a large country in which many different dialects are spoken. Although many Americans move a lot, they still recognize and understand each other's dialects.

什么是标准英语？是在英国、美国、加拿大、澳大利亚、印度、新西兰所说的英语吗？信不信由你，（世界上）没有什么标准英语。许多人认为，电视和收音机里所说的英语就是标准英语，这是因为在早期的电台节目里，人们期望新闻播音员所说的英语是最好的英语。然而，在电视和收音机里，你也会听出人们在说话时的差异。

当人们使用不同于“标准语言”的词语和表达时，那就叫做方言。美国英语有许多方言，特别是中西部地区和南部地区的方言，以及美国黑人和西班牙人的方言。即使在美国有些地区，两个相邻城镇的人所说的方言也可能稍有不同。美国英语之所以有这么多的方言是因为美国人是来自世界各地的缘故。

地理位置对方言的形成也有所影响。住在美国东部山区的一些人说比较古老的英语方言。当美国人从一个地方搬到另一个地方时，他们也就把他们的方言随着带去了。因此，美国东南部山区的人同美国西北部的人所说的方言就几乎相同。美国是一个大国，有着许许多多彼此不同的方言。虽然许多美国人经常搬家，但是他们仍然能够辨别和理解彼此的方言。

Reading and speaking 读与说

1 Amy and her American friends are visiting London. They plan to visit Amy's aunt and decide to go there by underground, but cannot find the nearest underground station. So she asks directions and then tells her friends. Read the dialogue and circle the words that mean the same.

1 艾米和她的美国朋友正在参观伦敦。她们计划去拜访艾米的姑妈，并决定乘地铁去，但是她们找不到最近的地铁站。所以她问问了路，然后告诉她的朋友。读对话，然后圈出意思相同的词。

AMY: Excuse me, Ma'ma. Could you tell me where the nearest subways is?

LADY: Er...the underground? Well, go round the corner on your left-hand side, straight on and cross two streets. It'll be on your right-hand side.

AMY: Thanks so much.

FRIENDS: What did she say, Amy?

AMY: She told us to go around the corner on the left and keep going straight for two blocks. The subway will be on our right.

艾米：对不起，夫人，你能告诉我去最近的地铁站怎么走吗？

夫人：呃……地铁？哦，往左边拐过去，一直往前走，走过两条街，地铁就是右边。

艾米：多谢了。

朋友：艾米，她说什么？

艾米：她叫我们往左边拐过去，一直往前走，走过两条街，地铁就是右边。

【意思相同的词】

subway←→underground （地铁）

right-hand side←→right （右边）

street←→block 街道，街区

Travel journal

JOURNEY DOWN THE MEKONG 沿湄公河而下的旅行

PART 1 THE DREAM AND THE PLAN 第一部分 梦想与计划

My name is Wang Kun. Ever since middle school, my sister Wang Wei and I have dreamed about taking a great bike trip. Two years ago she bought an expensive mountain bike and then she persuaded me to buy one. Last year, she visited our cousins, Dao Wei and Yu Hang at their college in Kunming. They are Dai and grew up in western Yunnan Province near the Lancang River, the Chinese part of the river that is called the Mekong River in other countries. Wang Wei soon got them interested in cycling too. After graduating from college, we finally got the chance to take a bike trip. I asked my sister, "Where are we going?" It was my sister who first had the idea to cycle along the entire Mekong River from where it begins to where it ends. Now she is planning our schedule for the trip.

I am fond of my sister but she has one serious shortcoming. She can be really stubborn. Although she didn't know the best way of getting to places, she insisted that she organize the trip properly. Now, I know that the proper way is always her way. I kept asking her, "When are we leaving and when are we coming back?" I asked her whether she had looked at a map yet. Of course, she hadn't; my sister doesn't care about details. So I told her that the source of the Mekong is in Qinghai Province. She gave me a determined look—the kind that said she would not change her mind. When I told her that our journey would begin at an altitude of more than 5,000 metres, she seemed to be excited about it. When I told her the air would be hard to breathe and it would be very cold, she said it would be an interesting experience. I know my sister well. Once she has made up her mind, nothing can change it. Finally, I had to give in.

Several months before our trip, Wang Wei and I went to the library. We found a large atlas with good maps that showed details of world geography. From the atlas we could see that the Mekong River begins in a glacier on a Tibetan mountain. At first the river is small and the water is clear and cold. Then it begins to move quickly. It becomes rapids as it passes through deep valleys, travelling across western Yunnan Province. Sometimes the river becomes a waterfall and enters wide valleys. We were both surprised to learn that half of the river is in China. After it leaves China and the high altitude, the Mekong becomes wide, brown and warm. As it enters Southeast Asia, its pace slows. It makes wide bends or meanders through low valleys to the plains where rice grows. At last, the river delta enters the South China Sea.

沿湄公河而下的旅行

第一部分 梦想与计划

我的名字叫王坤。从高中起，我姐姐和我就一直梦想作一次伟大的自行车旅行。两年前，她买了一辆价钱昂贵的山地自行车，然后她还说服我也买了一辆。去年她去看望了我们的表兄弟——在昆明读大学的刀伟和宇航。他们是傣族人，在云南省西部靠近澜沧江的地方长大，湄公

河在中国境内的这一段叫澜沧江，流经其他国家后就叫湄公河。很快，王薇使表兄弟也对骑车旅行产生了兴趣。到大学毕业后，我们终于有了作一次骑车旅行的机会。我问姐姐：“我们要去哪里？”首先想到要沿湄公河从源头到终点骑车旅行的是我的姐姐。现在，她正为这次旅行制订计划。

我很喜欢我姐姐，但是她有一个严重的缺点，她有时确实很固执。尽管她对到某些地方的最佳路线并不清楚，她却坚持要把这次旅行安排的尽善尽美。现在我知道了这个尽善尽美的方式总是她的方式。我老是问她：“我们什么时候动身？什么时候回来？”我问她是否已经看过地图。当然她并没有看过，我的姐姐是不会考虑细节的。于是我告诉她湄公河的源头在青海省。她给了我一个坚定的眼神——这种眼神表明她是不会改变主意的。当我告诉她我们的旅行将从5000多米的高地出发时，她似乎显得很兴奋。当我告诉她那里空气稀薄，呼吸会很困难，而且天气会很冷时，她却说这将是一次很有趣的经历。我非常了解我的姐姐，她一旦下了决心，就什么也不能使她改变。最后，我只好让步了。

在我们旅行前的几个月，王薇和我去了图书馆。我们找到了一本大型的地图册，里面有一些世界地理的明细图。我们从图上可以看到，湄公河源于西藏一座山上的冰川。起初，河很小，河水清澈而冷冽，然后它开始快速流动。它穿过深谷时就变成了急流。流经云南西部。有时，这条河形成瀑布进入宽阔的峡谷。我们惊奇的发现这条河有一半是在中国境内。当流出中国，流出高地后，湄公河就变宽，变暖了。河水也变成了黄褐色。而当它进入东南亚以后，流速减慢，河水变宽慢慢地穿过低谷，到了长着稻谷的平原。最后，湄公河三角洲的各支流流入中国南海。

Reading and discussing

PART 2 A NIGHT IN THE MOUNTAINS 第二部分 山中一宿

Although it was autumn, the snow was already beginning to fall in Tibet. Our legs were so heavy and cold that they felt like blocks of ice. Have you ever seen snowmen ride bicycles? That's what we looked like! Along the way children dressed in long wool coats stopped to look at us. In the late afternoon we found it was so cold that our water bottles froze. However, the lakes shone like glass in the setting sun and looked wonderful. Wang Wei rode in front of me as usual. She is very reliable and I knew I didn't need to encourage her. To climb the mountains was hard work but as we looked around us, we were surprised by the view. We seemed to be able to see for miles. At one point we were so high that we found ourselves cycling through clouds. Then we began going down the hills. It was great fun especially as it gradually became much warmer. In the valleys colourful butterflies flew around us and we saw many yaks and sheep eating green grass. At this point we had to change our caps, coats, gloves and trousers for T-shirts and shorts.

In the early evening we always stop to make camp. We put up our tent and then we eat. After supper Wang Wei put her head down on her pillow and went to sleep but I stayed awake. At midnight the sky became clearer and the stars grew brighter. It was so quiet. There was almost no wind—only the flames of our fire for company. As I lay beneath the stars I thought about how far we had already travelled.

We will reach Dali in Yunnan Province soon, where our cousins Dao Wei and Yu Hang will join us. We can hardly wait to see them!

虽然是秋天，但是西藏已经开始下雪了。我们的腿又沉又冷，感觉就像大冰块。你看到过雪人骑自行车吗？我们看上去就像那样。一路上，一些身着羊毛大衣的孩子们停下来看着我们。下午晚些时候，我们发现由于天冷我们的水壶都冻上了。然而，湖水在落日的余晖下闪亮如镜，景色迷人。像往常一样，王薇在我的前面，她很可靠，我知道我用不着给她鼓劲儿。上山很艰难，但是当我们环顾四周，（眼前的）景色让我们感到惊奇，我们似乎能看到几百里以外的地方。在某个时刻，我们发现自己置身高处，仿佛骑车穿越云层。然后我们开始下山，这非常有趣，特别是天气逐渐变得暖和多了。在山谷里，五彩斑斓的蝴蝶翩翩飞舞在我们身旁，我们还看到牦牛和羊群在吃草。这时，我们不得不把帽子、外衣、手套和长裤脱掉，换成T恤衫和短裤。

一到傍晚，我们通常就停下来宿营，（于是），我们先把帐篷支起来，然后吃饭。晚饭后，王薇把头放在枕头上就睡觉了，而我却醒着。半夜里，天空变得晴朗了，星星更亮了。（夜晚）非常安静——几乎没有风，只有篝火的火焰和我们做伴。当我躺在星空下，我想着我们已经走了多远。

我们很快就要到达云南的大理。在那里，我们的表兄弟刀卫和宇航将加入我们的行列。我们迫不及待地想要见到他们！

Unit 4 Earthquakes 第四单元 地震

Reading

A NIGHT THE EARTH DIDN'T SLEEP 地球的一个不眠之夜

Strange things were happening in the countryside of northeast Hebei. For three days the water in the village wells rose and fell, rose and fell. Farmers noticed that the well walls had deep cracks in them. A smelly gas came out of the cracks. In the farmyards, the chickens and even the pigs were too nervous to eat. Mice ran out of the fields looking for places to hide. Fish jumped out of their bowls and ponds. At about 3:00 am on July 28, 1976, some people saw bright lights in the sky. The sound of planes could be heard outside the city of Tangshan even when no planes were in the sky. In the city, the water pipes in some buildings cracked and burst. But the one million people of the city, who thought little of these events, were asleep as usual that night.

At 3:42 am everything began to shake. It seemed as if the world was at an end! Eleven kilometres directly below the city the greatest earthquake of the 20th century had begun. It was felt in Beijing, which is more than two hundred kilometres away. One-third of the nation felt it. A huge crack that was eight kilometres long and thirty metres wide cut across houses, roads and canals. Steam burst from holes in the ground. Hard hills of rock became rivers of dirt. In fifteen terrible seconds a large city lay in ruins. The suffering of the people was extreme. Two-thirds of them died or were left

without parents. The number of people who were killed or injured reached more than 400,000.

But how could the survivors believe it was natural? Everywhere they looked nearly everything was destroyed. All of the city's hospitals, 75% of its factories and buildings and 90% of its homes were gone. Bricks covered the ground like red autumn leaves. No wind, however, could blow them away. Two dams fell and most of the bridges also fell or were not safe for travelling. The railway tracks were now useless pieces of steel. Tens of thousands of cows would never give milk again. Half a million pigs and millions of chickens were dead. Sand now filled the wells instead of water. People were shocked. Then, later that afternoon, another big quake which was almost as strong as the first one shook Tangshan. Some of the rescue workers and doctors were trapped under the ruins. More buildings fell down. Water, food, and electricity were hard to get. People began to wonder how long the disaster would last.

All hope was not lost. Soon after the quakes, the army sent 150,000 soldiers to Tangshan to help the rescue workers. Hundreds of thousands of people were helped. The army organized teams to dig out those who were trapped and to bury the dead. To the north of the city, most of the 10,000 miners were rescued from the coal mines there. Workers built shelters for survivors whose homes had been destroyed. Fresh water was taken to the city by train, truck and plane. Slowly, the city began to breathe again.

河北省东北部的农村不断有些怪事发生：三天来，村子里的井水升升降降，起起伏伏。农夫注意到，水井的井壁上有深深的裂缝，裂缝里冒出臭气。农家大院里的鸡，甚至猪都紧张得想吃食。老鼠从田地里跑出来找地方藏身。鱼缸和池塘里的鱼会往外跳。在 1976 年 7 月 28 日凌晨 3 点左右，有些人看到天上一道道明亮的光。即使天空没有飞机，在唐山市城外也可以听到飞机声。在市内，有些建筑物里的水管爆裂开来。但是，唐山市的一百万居民几乎都没有把这些情况当一回事，当天晚上照常睡着了。

在凌晨 3 点 42 分，一切都开始摇晃起来。世界似乎到了末日！二十世纪最大的一次地震就在唐山市正下方 11 公里处发生了。100 公里以外的北京市都感到了地震，全国 1/3 的地方都有震感。一条 8 公里长 30 米宽的巨大裂缝横穿房舍、马路和渠道。地上一些洞穴冒出了蒸气。石头山变成了泥沙河，在可怕的 15 秒钟内，一座大城市就沉沦在一片废墟之中。人们遭受的灾难极为深重。2/3 的人在地震中死去或受伤。成千上万个家庭遇难，许多孩子变成了孤儿。死伤的人数达到 40 多万。

幸存的人们又怎么能相信这是自然现象呢？人们无论朝哪里看，哪里的一切都几乎被毁了。所有的市内医院、75% 的工厂和建筑物、90% 的家园都消失了。残砖就像秋天的红叶覆盖着大地，然而它们是不可能被风刮走的。两座大坝垮了，多数桥梁不是塌了就是无法安全通行。铁轨如今成了一条条废钢。好几万头牛再也挤不出奶来。50 万头猪和几百万只鸡全都死了。井里满是沙子，而不是水。人们惊呆了。接着，在下午晚些时候，又一次和第一次一样的强烈的地震震撼着唐山。有些医生和救援人员被困在废墟下面。更多的房屋倒塌了。水、电和食物都很难弄到。人们开始纳闷，这场灾难还会持续多久。

不是所有的希望都破灭了。地震后不久，部队派了 15 万名战士到唐山来协助救援人员，数十万的人得到了救助。部队人员组成小分队，将受困的人们挖出来，将死者掩埋。在唐山市的北边，有一个万名矿工的煤矿，其中多数人得救了。援救人员为那些家园被毁的幸存者盖起了避

难所，用火车、卡车和飞机向市内运来了水。慢慢地、慢慢地，这座城市又开始出现了生机。

Reading and speaking

Office of the City Government

Tangshan, Hebei

China

July 5, 2007

Dear _____,

Congratulations! We are pleased to tell you that you have won the high school speaking competition about new Tangshan. Your speech was heard by a group of five judges, all of whom agreed that it was the best one this year. Your parents and your school should be very proud of you!

Next month the city will open a new park to honour those who died in the terrible disaster. The park will also honour those who helped the survivors. Our office would like to have you speak to the park visitors on July 28 at 11:00 am. As you know, this is the day the quake happened thirty-_____ years ago.

We invite you to bring your family and friends on that special day.

Sincerely,

Zhang Sha

唐山市政府办公室

亲爱的_____:

恭喜你！我们很高兴地告诉你，你在以新唐山为主题的中学演讲比赛中获得第一名。评委会的五位评委听了你的演讲，他们都认为你的演讲是今年最好的。你的父母亲和你的学校会为你而骄傲！

下个月我们将开放一个新公园，以纪念在那次可怕的灾难中死去的人们，并向那些曾经为幸存者提供过帮助的人们致敬。我们办公室想请你在 7 月 28 日上午 11 点给来公园的参观者进行演讲。你知道，三十（）年前的这一天正是唐山发生地震的日子。

在这个特殊的日子里，我们邀请你把家人和朋友一起带来。

诚挚的
张沙

Unit 5 第五单元 纳尔逊·曼德拉——一位当代英雄

ELIAS' STORY 伊莱亚斯的故事

My name is Elias. I am a poor black worker in South Africa. The time when I first met Nelson Mandela was a very difficult period of my life. I was twelve years old. It was in 1952 and Mandela was the black lawyer to whom I went for advice. He offered guidance to poor black people on their legal problems. He was generous with his time, for which I was grateful.

I needed his help because I had very little education. I began school at six. The school where I studied for only two years was three kilometers away. I had to leave because my family could not continue to pay the school fees and the bus fare. I could not read or write well. After trying hard, I got a job in a gold mine. However, this was a time when one had got to have a passbook to live in Johannesburg. Sadly I did not have it because I was not born there, and I worried about whether I would become out of work.

The day when Nelson Mandela helped me was one of my happiest. He told me how to get the correct papers so I could stay in Johannesburg. I became more hopeful about my future. I never forgot how kind Mandela was. When he organized the ANC Youth League, I joined it as soon as I could. He said:

“The last thirty years have seen the greatest number of laws stopping our rights and progress, until today we have reached a stage where we have almost no rights at all.”

It was the truth. Black people could not vote or choose their leaders. They could not get the jobs they wanted. The parts of town in which they had to live were decided by white people. The places outside the towns where they were sent to live were the poorest parts of South Africa. No one could grow food there. In fact as Nelson Mandela said:

“...we were put into a position in which we had either to accept we were less important or fight the government. We chose to attack the laws. We first broke the law in a way which was peaceful; when this was not allowed...only then did we decide to answer violence with violence.

As a matter of fact, I do not like violence...but in 1963 I helped him blow up some government buildings. It was very dangerous because if I was caught I could be put in prison. But I was happy to help because I knew it would help us achieve our dream of making black and white people equal.

我的名字叫伊莱亚斯。我是南非的一个穷苦的黑人工人。第一次见到纳尔逊·曼德拉的时候，是我一生中非常艰难的时期。（当时）我才 12 岁，那是在 1952 年，曼德拉是我寻求帮助的一位黑人律师。他为那些穷苦黑人提供法律指导。他十分慷慨地给予我时间，我为此非常感激。

由于我所受的教育很少，所以我需要他的帮助。我六岁开始上学，我仅仅在那里读了两年的学校有三公里远。我不得不辍学，因为我的家庭无法继续支付学费和交通费。我既不太会读，

也不怎么会写。几经周折，我才在一家金矿找到一份工作。然而在那个时候，你要想住在约翰内斯堡就非得要有身份证不可。糟糕的是我没有这个证件，因为我不是在那里出生的，我很担心我是不是会失业。

纳尔逊·曼德拉给予我帮助的那一天是我一生中最高兴的日子。他告诉我要想在约翰内斯堡立住脚，应当如何获取所需证件。我对自己的未来又充满了希望。我永远也忘记不了他对我的恩情，当他组织了非国大青年联盟时，我马上就参加了这个组织。他说：“过去 30 年来所出现的大量法律剥夺我们的权利，阻挡我们的进步，一直到今天，我们还处在几乎什么权利都没有的阶段。”

他说的是真话。当时黑人没有选举权，他们无权选择他们的领导人。他们不能做自己想要做的工作。他们所能住的城区都是由白人决定的。他们被打发去住的城外地区是南非最贫穷的地区。在那儿，没有人能够种庄稼。事实上，就像拉尔逊·曼德拉所说的：

“……我们被置于这样一个境地：要么我们被迫接受低人一等的现实，要么跟政府作斗争。我们选择向法律进攻。首先我们用和平的方式来破坏法律，而当这种方式也得不到允许时，……只有到这个时候，我们才决定用暴力反抗暴力。”

事实上，我并不喜欢暴力，……但是在 1963 年的时候，我帮助他炸毁了一些政府大楼。那是很危险的事情，因为如果我被抓住了，可能就会被关进监狱。但是，我乐于帮忙，因为我知道，这是为了实现我们的黑人和白人平等的梦想。

THE REST OF ELIAS' STORY

You cannot imagine how the name of Robben Island made us afraid. It was a prison from which no one escaped. There I spent the hardest time of my life. But when I got there Nelsom Mandela was also there and he helped me. Mr Mandela began a school for those of us who had little learning. He taught us during the lunch breaks and the evenings when we should have been asleep. We read books under our blankets and used anything we could find to make candles to see the words. I became a good student. I wanted to study for my degree but I was not allowed to do that. Later, Mr Mandela allowed the prison guards to join us. He said they should not be stopped from studying for their degrees. They were not cleverer than me , but they did pass their exams. So I knwe I could get a degree too. That made me feel good about myself.

When I finished the four years in prison, I went to find a job. Since I was better educated, I got a job working in an office. However, the police found out and told my boss that I had been in prinson for blowing up government buildings. So I lost my job. I did not work again for twenty years until M r Mandela and the ANC came to power in 1994. All that time my wife and children had to beg for good and help from relatives or friends. Luckily Mr Mandela remembered me and gave me a job taking tourists around my old prison on Robben Islannd. I felt bad the first time I talked to a group. All the terror and fear of that time came back to me. I remembered the beatings and the cruelty of the guards and my friends who had died. I felt I would not be able to do it, but my family encouraged me. They said that the job and the pay from the new South African government were my reward after working all my life for equal rights for the Blacks. So now at 51 I am proud to show

visitors over the prison, for I helped to make our people free in their own land.

必修 2 unit1 高中英语必修 2

第一单元 文物 Cultural Relics

IN SEARCH OF THE AMBER ROOM 寻找琥珀屋

Frederick William I, the King of Prussia, could never have imagined that his greatest gift to the Russian people would have such an amazing history. This gift was the Amber Room, which was given this name because several tons of amber were used to make it. The amber which was selected had a beautiful yellow-brown colour like honey. The design of the room was in the fancy style popular in those days. It was also a treasure decorated with gold and jewels, which took the country's best artists about ten years to make.

In fact, the room was not made to be a gift. It was designed for the palace of Frederick I. However, the next King of Prussia, Frederick William I, to whom the amber room belonged, decided not to keep it. In 1716 he gave it to Peter the Great. In return, the Czar sent him a troop of his best soldiers. So the Amber Room became part of the Czar's winter palace in St Petersburg. About four metres long, the room served as a small reception hall for important visitors.

Later, Catherine II had the Amber Room moved to a palace outside St Petersburg where she spent her summers. She told her artists to add more details to it. In 1770 the room was completed the way she wanted. Almost six hundred candles lit the room, and its mirrors and pictures shone like gold. Sadly, although the Amber Room was considered one of the wonders of the world, it is now missing.

In September 1941, the Nazi army was near St Petersburg. This was a time when the two countries were at war. Before the Nazis could get to the summer palace, the Russians were able to remove some furniture and small art objects from the Amber Room. However, some of the Nazis secretly stole the room itself. In less than two days 100,000 pieces were put inside twenty-seven wooden boxes. There is no doubt that the boxes were then put on a train for Königsberg, which was at that time a German city on the Baltic Sea. After that, what happened to the Amber Room remains a mystery.

Recently, the Russians and Germans have built a new Amber Room at the summer palace. By studying old photos of the former Amber Room, they have made the new one look like the old one. In 2003 it was ready for the people of St Petersburg when they celebrated the 300th birthday of their city.

普鲁士国王腓特烈·威廉一世绝不可能想到他送给俄罗斯人民的厚礼会有一段令人惊讶的

历史。

这件礼物就是琥珀屋,它之所以有这个名字,是因为造这间房子用了近几吨琥珀,被选择的琥珀色彩艳丽,呈黄褐色,像蜜一样。屋子的设计当时流行的极富艺术表现力的建筑风格。琥珀屋这件珍品还镶嵌著黄金和珠宝,全国最优秀的艺术家用了是年的时间才完成它。

事实上,琥珀屋并不是作为礼物而建造的。它是作为腓烈特一世的宫殿而建造的。然而,下一位普鲁士国王,腓烈特·威廉一世,这个琥珀屋的主人却决定不再要它了。1716年,他把它送给了彼得大帝。作为回馈,沙皇则送给他一队自己最好的士兵。所以,琥珀屋就成了沙皇在圣彼得堡东宫的一部分。琥珀屋长约4米,被用作接待重要来宾的小型会客室。

后来、叶卡捷琳娜二世派人把琥珀屋搬到了圣彼得堡郊外避暑的宫殿中。她让艺术家们给它增添了更多的装饰。1770年,这间琥珀屋按她要求的方式完工了。将近600支蜡烛照亮了这个房间,里面的镜子和图画就像金子一样闪闪发光。不幸的是,虽然琥珀屋被认为是世界奇迹之一,可是现在它却下落不明。

1941年9月,纳粹德国的军队逼近了圣彼得堡。这是两国交战的时期。在纳粹分子能够到达夏宫之前,俄国人只来得及把琥珀屋里的一些家具和小型艺术饰品搬走。可是琥珀屋本身却被一些纳粹分子秘密地运走了。在不到两天的时间里,琥珀屋被拆成10万块装进了27个木箱里。毫无疑问,这些箱子后来被装上火车运往哥尼斯堡,当时它是波罗的海的海边的一个城市。

从那以后,琥珀屋的最终归宿就成了一个谜。最近俄国人和德国人已经在夏宫建立起了一个新的琥珀屋,通过研究前琥珀屋的照片,他们使得新的琥珀屋的样子与原来的非常相像。2003年,在圣彼得堡人民庆祝他们的城市建立300周年的时候,它已经完工了。

Reading and listening

A FACT OR AN OPINION? 一个事实还是一个观点

What is a fact? Is it something that people believe? No. A fact is anything that can be proved. For example, it can be proved that China has more people than any other country in the world. This is a fact.

Then what is an opinion? An opinion is what someone believes is true but has not been proved. So an opinion is not good evidence in a trial. For example, it is an opinion if you say "Cats are better pets than dogs". It may be true, but it is difficult to prove. Some people may not agree with this opinion but they also cannot prove that they are right.

In a trial, a judge must decide which eyewitnesses to believe and which not to believe. The judge does not consider what each eyewitness looks like or where that person lives or works. He/she only cares about whether the eyewitness has given true information, which must be facts rather than opinions. This kind of information is called evidence.

什么是事实? 是一些人们相信的东西吗? 不! 事实是可以被证明的任何事。例如, 可以证明中国人口比世界上任何其他国家的人口都要多。这是一个事实。

那么什么是一个观点? 一个观点是人们相信那是真的但还没有被证明的。所以一个观点在一个审判中不是一个好的证据。例如, 如果你说“猫是比狗好的宠物”这会是一个观点。这可能

是真的，不过很难去证明。一些人可能不同意这个观点不过他们也不能去证明他们是对的。

在一场审批中，一个审判官一定要去决定相信哪个目击者哪个目击者不应该相信。这个审判官不会去考虑每个目击者的长相或人们在哪里居住或工作。他/她只关心目击者是否会提供真是的信息，信息一定是事实而不是观点。这类的信息被称为证据。

Unit 2 第二单元奥林匹克运动会

AN INTERVIEW 一个采访

Pausanias, who was a Greek writer about 2,000 years ago, has come on a magical journey on March 18th 2007 to find out about the present-day Olympic Games. He is now interviewing Li Yan, a volunteer for the 2008 Olympic Games.

P: My name is Pausanias. I lived in what you call "Ancient Greece" and I used to write about the Olympic Games a long time ago. I've come to your time to find out about the present-day Olympic Games because I know that in 2004 they were held in my homeland. May I ask you some questions about the modern Olympics?

L: Good heavens! Have you really come from so long ago? But of course you can ask any questions you like. What would you like to know?

P: How often do you hold your Games?

L: Every four years. There are two main sets of Games-the Winter and Summer Olympics, and both are held every four years on a regular basis. The Winter Olympics are usually held two years before the Summer Games. Only athletes who have reached the agreed standard for their event will be admitted as competitors. They may come from anywhere in the world.

P: Winter Games? How can the runners enjoy competing in winter? And what about the horses?

L: Oh no! There are no running races or horse riding events. Instead there are competitions like skiing and ice skating which need snow and ice. That's why they're called the Winter Olympics. It's in the Summer Olympics that you have the running races, together with swimming, sailing and all the team sports.

P: I see. Earlier you said that athletes are invited from all over the world. Do you mean the Greek world? Our Greek cities used to compete against each other just for the honour of winning. No other countries could join in, nor could slaves or women!

L: Nowadays any country can take part if their athletes are good enough. There are over 250 sports

and each on has its own standard. Women are not only allowed, but play a very important role in gymnastics, athletics, team sports and ...

P: Please wait a minute! All those events, all those countries and even women taking part! Where are all the athletes housed?

L: For each Olympics, a special village is built for them to live in, a main reception building, several stadiums for competitions, and a gymnasium as well.

P: That sounds very expensive. Does anyone want to host the Olympic Games?

L: As a matter of fact, every country wants the opportunity. It's a great responsibility but also a great honour to be chosen. There's as much competition among countries to host the Olympics as to win Olympic medals. The 2008 Olympics will be held in Beijing, China. Did you know that?

P: Oh yes! You must be very proud.

L: Certainly. And after that the 2012 Olympics will be held in London. They have already started planning for it. A new village for the athletes and all the stadiums will be built to the east of London. New medals will be designed of course and ...

P: Did you say medals? So even the olive wreath has been replaced! Oh dear! Do you compete for prize money too?

L: No, we don't. it's still all about being able to run faster, jump higher and throw further. That's the motto of the Olympics, you know--"Swifter, Higher and Stronger."

P: Well, that's good news. How interesting! Thank you so much for your time.

大约 2000 年前的一个希腊作者帕萨尼亚斯(P)，在 2007 年 3 月 18 日踏上了一段魔幻的旅程去查明关于现代的奥林匹克运动会。他正在采访一个 2008 年奥林匹克运动会志愿者李岩(L)。

P:我是帕萨尼亚斯。我住在你们所说的“古希腊”而且在很久之前我常常写以一些关于奥林匹克运动会的事情。我来到你的时代是为了解关于现代奥林匹克运动会因为我知道 2004 年奥林匹克运动会会在我家乡举办。我可以问你一些关于现代奥林匹克运动会的问题么？

L:真是极为愉快的事!你真的来自那么久远的时代么？不过当然你可以问你想问的问题。你想知道什么？

P:你们多久会举办一次运动会？

L:四年一次。有两种主要的运动会形式--冬季和夏季奥运会，并且在一个有规律的基础上他们都是四年举办一次的。冬季奥运会一般会在夏季奥运会前两年举办。只有达到该项目既定的标准的运动员才会被容许成为竞争者。他们可以来自世界各地。

P:冬季奥运会？田径运动员如何在冬季享受比赛？还有马术又怎样？

L:哦不!冬季奥运会没有赛跑和骑马的项目。反而会有一些像滑雪和溜冰这些需要雪和冰的项目。这就是为什么他成为冬季奥运会。只有在夏季奥运会会有你说赛跑,同时还有游泳,帆船运动和所有团队运动。

P:我懂了。之前你说那些运动员都被邀请来自世界各地。你了解希腊世界么?我们希腊城过去互相竞赛只为胜利的荣誉。没有其他的地区可以参加,奴隶和妇女也不可以。

L:现在只要他们的运动员够好的话任何国家都可以参加。有超过 250 种项目并且每一种都有它自己的标准。妇女不仅允许参加比赛,并且她们在体操比赛,竞技比赛,团队比赛和其他各种比赛中都扮演着重要的角色。

P:麻烦稍等一下!所有的这些项目,所有的国民甚至妇女都可以参加!那么这些运动员们居住在哪里?

L:在每一场奥运会前,一座特别的村庄会被建来给他们居住,还有一座主要的接待建筑,几个用来比赛的体育场和一座体育馆等

P:那听起来很贵。有哪个国家会想要举办奥运会么?

L:事实上,每个国家都想要这个机会。这是一个很大的责任同样是一个很大的荣誉如果被挑选到。在国家之间有很多竞争去为举办奥运会就像去赢得奥林匹克奖牌一样。2008 年的奥运会将会在北京举行。这你知道吗?

P:哦是的!你一定非常自豪。

L:当然。之后的 2012 年奥运会将在伦敦举行。他们早就开始为这个做准备了。一座让运动员居住的村庄和所有的运动场将会被建在东伦敦。当然新的奖牌会被设计.....

P:你是说奖牌么?所以甚至是橄榄花圈也已经被取代了!哦亲爱的!你们比赛也为了奖金么?

L:不我们不。现在仍然想要跑得更快跳的更高扔得更远。正如你知道的奥运会的格言-“更快更高更强”。

P:好吧,那是个好消息。多么有趣啊!耽搁你的时间,谢谢了。

THE STORY OF ATLANTA 亚特兰大的故事

Atlanta was a Greek princess. She was very beautiful and could run faster than any man in Greece. But she was not allowed to run and win glory for herself in the Olympic Games. She was so angry that she said to her father that she would not marry anyone who could not run faster than her. Her father said that she must marry, so Atlanta made a bargain with him. She said to him, "These are my rules. When a man says he wants to marry me, I will run against him. If he cannot run as fast as me, he will be killed. No one will be pardoned."

Many kings and princes wanted to marry Atlanta, but when they heard of rules they knew it was hopeless. So many of them sadly went home, but others stayed to run the race. There was a man called Hippomenes who was amazed when he heard of Atlanta's rules, "Why are these men so foolish?" he thought. "Why will they let themselves be killed because they cannot run as fast as this princess?" However, when she saw Atlanta come out of her house to run, Hippomenes changed his

mind."I will marry Atlanta--or die!" he said.

The race started and although the man ran very fast, Atlanta ran faster. As Hippomenes watched he thought, "How can I run as fast as Atlanta?" He went to ask the Greek Godness of Love for help. She promised to help him and gave him three golden apples. She said, "Throw an apple in front of Atlanta when she is running past. When she stops to pick it up, you will be able to run past her and win."

Hippomenes took the apples and went to the King. He said, "I want to marry Atlanta." The King was sad to see another man die, but Hippomenes said, "I will marry her-----or die!" So the race began.

亚特兰大是一个希腊公主。她很漂亮并且可以跑得比希腊的任何一个男人都快。不过她不被允许在奥运会上跑步去为她自己赢得荣誉。她很生气因此她跟她父亲说她不会嫁任何跑不过她的男人。她父亲说她必须要嫁，所以亚特兰大与她父亲定下一个条件。她对她父亲说，“这是我的原则。如果有男人说想要嫁我，我会跟她赛跑。如果他跑不赢我，他会被杀。没有人能被例外。”

很多国王和王子想要娶亚特兰大，不过当他们听到这个规定的时候他们就知道自己没希望了。所以他们当中的很多人都伤心地回家了，不过其他的人都留着去赛跑。一个叫做希波墨涅斯的男人听到亚特兰大的消息后感到非常惊奇，他想“为什么这些男的都这么愚蠢呢？”“为什么他们会因为跑不过这个公主而让自己被杀呢？”然而，当他看到亚特兰大从她的房子出来跑步的时候，希波墨涅斯改变了他的心意。他说，“我会娶亚特兰大或者死！”

赛跑开始的时候虽然男人们都跑得很快，但是亚特兰大总是会更快。希波墨涅斯边看边想，“我要怎样才能赢过亚特兰大呢？”他去向希腊的爱神求助。爱神答应帮他并给了他三个金苹果。她说，“在亚特兰大跑过你的时候扔一个在亚特兰大面前。当亚特兰大停下来去捡苹果的时候，你就可以跑过她并赢得比赛。”希波墨涅斯拿着苹果并跑去找国王。他说，“我想娶亚特兰大。”国王伤心地看着又一个男人要死，不过希波墨涅斯说，“我会娶她或者死！”然后赛跑开始了。

Unit 3 第三单元 电脑 Computers

WHO AM I ?我是谁

Over time I have been changed quite a lot. I began as a calculating machine in France in 1642. Although I was young I could simplify difficult sums. I developed very slowly and it took nearly two hundred years before I was built as an analytical machine by Charles Babbage. After I was programmed by an operator who used cards with holes, I could “think” logically and produce an answer quicker than any person. At that time it was considered a technological revolution and the start of my “artificial intelligence”. In 1936 my real father, Alan Turing, wrote a book about how I could be made to work as a “universal machine” to solve any difficult mathematical problem. From then on, I grew rapidly both in size and in brainpower. By the 1949s I had grown as large as a room, and I wondered if I would grow any larger. However, this reality also worried my designers. As time went by, as was make smaller. First as a PC(personal computer) and then as a laptop, I have been

used in offices and homes since the 1970s.

These changes only became possible as my memory improved. First it was stored in tubes, then on transistors and later on very small chips. As a result I totally changed my shape. As I have grown older I have also grown smaller. Over time my memory has developed so much that, like an elephant, I never forget anything I have been told! And my memory became so large that even I couldn't believe it! But I was always so lonely standing there by myself, until in early 1960s they gave me a family connected by a network. I was able to share my knowledge with others through the World Wide Web.

Since the 1970s many new applications have been found for my. I have become very important in communication, finance and trade. I have also been put into robots and used to make mobile phones as well as help with medical operations. I have even been put into space rockets and sent to explore the Moon and Mars. Anyhow, my goal is to provide humans with a life of high quality. I am now truly filled with happiness that I am a devoted friend and helper of the human race!

随着时间的推移我被改变了很多。在 1642 年的法国，我是作为一个计算机器而开始的。虽然我很年轻我可以简化一些计算题。在我被 Charles Babbage 改造成分析机器之前我很慢的发展了接近两百年。之后我被一个操作员用带洞的卡调制成了可以合逻辑地思考并且比任何人都快地得出一些问题的答案。那是一个被成为技术改革的时候并且开始了我的人造智能。在 1936 年我真正的父亲 Alan Turing 写了一本关于我如何像普遍的机器一样去解决任何困难的数学问题的书。从那时起，我在体积和智能方面快速的发展。在 1940 年我变得像一个房间一样大，并且我想知道我是否还能变得更大。然而，事实也在困扰着我的设计者。随着时间的推移，我被制的更小。首先是个人电脑再到后来的手提电脑，在 1970 年我已经开始被用在办公室和家里。

这些变化只因为我记忆力的增强。开始记忆被存放于电子管里，然后是晶体管和后来更小的晶片。因此我改变了我的整个外型。随着我慢慢变老我也慢慢的变小。随着时间推移我的记忆力发展的那么快，像头大象，我不会忘记任何我曾被告知的东西！而且我的记忆力变得如此的大以至于我都不敢相信！不过我总是自己那么孤单的站在那里，直到 1960 年他们通过网络给了我一个家庭关系。我能够通过万维网和其他的电脑分享我的知识。

从 1970 年起很多新的应用为我而被发明。我在交流，金融和贸易方面变得重要。我同样被放进遥控装置中被用来制造移动电话也帮助医学手术。我已经被放进太空火箭并被送去探测月亮和火星。即使如此，我的目的是为人们提供高质量的生活。我现在充满快乐应为我成为了人类种族中的一个忠心的朋友和帮助者。

ANDY – THE ANDROID 机器人-Andy

I'm part of an android football team. About once a year we are allowed to get together to play a game of football. I'm as big as a human. In fact, I look like one too. On the football team I'm a striker so I have to be able to run very fast. My computer chips help me to move and think like a human. For example, I have learned to signal to my teammates in computer language to give me the ball when I am open and have a good shot for a goal.

My first football competition was in Nagoya, Japan several years ago. Last year our team went to Seattle, Washington in the USA. We won second place. Personally, I think the team that won first place cheated. They had developed a new type of program just before the competition. So we need to encourage our programmer to improve our intelligence too. We are determined to create an even better system. In a way our programmer is like our coach. She programs us with all the possible moves she has seen while watching human games. Then she prepares reliable moves to use if a new situation arises. In this way I can make up new moves using my “artificial intelligence”. I could like to play against a human team, for I have been programmed to act just like them. After all, with the help of my electronic brain which never forgets anything, using my intelligence is what I’m all about!

我是一个机器人球队的一份子。我们被允许在一齐踢足球大约一年了。我像一个人类一样高大。事实上，我长得也像人类。在球队里我是前锋因此我要跑得非常快。我的电脑芯片帮助我移动并且像人类一样思考。例如，我已经学会了当我要开动去射一个好球的时候用电脑语言向我的队友发信号让他们把球传给我。

我的第一场足球比赛是在几年前在日本的名古屋。去年我们球队去了美国华盛顿和西雅图。我们胜利的第二个地方。就我个人观点，我认为我们球队第一次赢的地方是作弊的。他们已经在比赛之前一种新的程序类型。所以我们也要促进我们的程序去提高我们的智能。我们决心要去一种甚至更好的标志。一定程度上说我们的程序就像我们的教练。她训练我们所有在人类比赛中她能看到的所有可能的动作。如果一种新情况出现她会准备可靠的动作去运用。用这种方式我可以用我的“人造智能”去制造新的动作。我能够被编程成像人类一样的表现我就可以真的与一队人类球队去比赛。毕竟，在我不会忘掉任何东西的电子脑袋的帮助下，我的所有就是用我的智能！

Unit 4 第四单元 保护野生动物 Wildlife protection

HOW DAISY LEARNED TO HELP WILDLIFE

Daisy 如何学习去帮助野生动物

Daisy had always longed to help endangered species of wildlife. One day she woke up and found a flying carpet by her bed. “Where do you want to go?” it asked. Daisy responded immediately. “I’d like to see some endangered wildlife,” she said. “Please take me to a distant land where I can find the animal that gave fur to make this sweater.” At once the carpet flew away and took her to Tibet. There daisy saw an antelope looking sad. It said, “We’re being killed for the wool beneath our stomachs. Our fur is being used to make sweaters for people like you. As a result, we are now an endangered species.” At that Daisy cried, “I’m sorry I didn’t know that. I wonder what is being done to help you. Flying carpet, please show me a place where there’s some wildlife protection.”

The flying carpet traveled so fast that next minute they were in Zimbabwe. Daisy turned around and found that she was being watched by an elephant. “Have you come to take my photo?” it asked. In relief Daisy burst into laughter. “Don’t laugh,” said the elephant, “We used to be an endangered species. Farmers hunted us without mercy. They said we destroyed their farms, and money from

tourists only went to the large tour companies. So the government decided to help. They allowed tourists to hunt only a certain number of animals if they paid the farmers. Now the farmers are happy and our numbers are increasing. So good things are being done here to save local wildlife.”

Daisy smiled, “That’s good news. It shows the importance of wildlife protection, but I’d like to help as the WWF suggests.” The carpet rose again and almost at once they were in a thick rainforest. A monkey watched them as it rubbed itself. “What are you doing?” asked Daisy. “I’m protecting myself from mosquitoes,” it replied. When I find a millipede insect, I rub it over my body. It contains a powerful drug which affects mosquitoes. You should pay more attention to the rainforest where I live the appreciate how the animals live together. No rainforest, no animals, no drugs.”

Daisy was amazed. “Flying carpet, please take me home so I can tell WWF and we can begin producing this new drug. Monkey, please come and help.” The monkey agreed. The carpet flew home. As they landed, things began to disappear. Two minutes later everything had gone-the monkey, too. So Daisy was not able to make her new drug. But what an experience! She had learned so much! And there was always WWF...

Daisy 常常渴望去帮助濒临灭绝的种类的野生动物。一天她醒来发现一个正在飞行的飞毯在她包里。“你想去哪里？”它问。Daisy 立刻回答它。“我想去看那些濒临灭绝的动物，”她说。“请带我去那个我可以找到供给皮毛去制造这件毛衣的动物的一个遥远的地方。”飞毯立刻带她飞去了西藏。在那里 Daisy 看到了一支看起来很伤心的羚羊。它说，“我们被杀是为了我们肚子下的毛。我们的皮毛被人类用来制造像你这样的毛衣。因此，现在我们是一种濒临灭绝的种类。”然后 Daisy 哭喊着，“我很抱歉我不知道那些。我想知道什么可以被做来帮助你们。飞毯，请带我去一个有一些野生动物保护区的地方。”

飞毯飞得如此的快以至于他们下一分钟就在 Zimbabwe。Daisy 转来转去然后发现她被一头大象盯着。“你过来跟我照相了么？”它问。Daisy 松了口气突然笑起来。“不要笑，”大象说，“我们曾经是濒临灭绝的品种。农民好不仁慈地猎杀我们。他们说我们破坏了他们的天地，和来自那些只游览大工厂的游客的钱。所以政府决定去帮助。他们允许游客给钱农民然后可以去猎杀确定数量的动物。现在农民很高兴而且我们的数量在增加。所以好事情正被做于营救当地的野生动物。”

Daisy 微笑了。“那是个好消息。它展示了野生动物保护的重要性，不过我喜欢去帮助像 WWF 这样的建议。”飞毯再次升起然后几乎同一时间他们在一个阴霾的热带雨林。一支猴子看着他们就像它摩擦它自己。“你在干什么？”Daisy 问。“我在保护自己不受蚊子的伤害，”它回答。“当我找到一只千足虫昆虫，我会在我身上摩擦它。它包涵了一种强大的可以影响蚊子的药物。你应该更加注意那些我居住的热带雨林并好好鉴赏动物们如何居住在一齐。没有雨林，没有动物，没有药物。”

Daisy 很惊讶。“飞毯，请带我回家这样我可以联系 WWF 并开始保护这种新的药物。猴子，请过来帮忙。”那猴子同意了。飞毯飞回家了。当他们降落时，事物开始消失了。两分钟后所有东西都消失了-那只猴子也是。所以 Daisy 不能去制造她的新药物。不过如此的一段经历！她已经学习了那么多东西！而且还有 WWF.....

READING AND LISTENING

ANIMAL EXTINCTION 动物灭绝

Many animals have disappeared during the long history of the earth. The most famous of these animals are dinosaurs. They lived on the earth tens of millions of years ago, long before humans came into being and their future seemed secure at that time.

There were many different kinds of dinosaur and a number of them used to live in China. The eggs of twenty-five species have been found in Xixia, County, Nanyang, Henan Province. Not long ago a rare new species of bird-like dinosaur was discovered in Chaoyang County, Liaoning Province. When scientists inspected the bones, they were surprised to find that these dinosaurs could not only run like the others but also climb trees. They learned this from the way the bones were joined together.

Dinosaurs died out suddenly about 65 million years ago. Some scientists think it came after an unexpected incident when a huge rock from space hit the earth and put too much dust into the air. Others think the earth got too hot for the dinosaurs

to live on any more. Nobody knows for sure why and how dinosaurs disappeared from the earth in such a short time.

We know many other wild plants, animals, insects and birds have died out more recently. According to a UN report, some 844 animals and plants have disappeared in the last 500 years. The dodo is one of them. It lived on the Island of Mauritius and was a very friendly animal. Please listen to a story of the dodo and how it disappeared from the earth.

在地球漫长的历史中许多动物都消失了。其中最有名的动物是恐龙。他们几千万年前生活在地球上，远远早于人类的出现，在当时他们的未来似乎是安全的。有许多不同种类的恐龙，并且大量的恐龙以前生活在中国。已经有 25 种恐龙蛋在河南省南阳市西峡县被发现了。不久前一种稀有的像鸟类的恐龙在辽宁省朝阳县被发现。当科学家们考察了骨头，他们惊讶地发现，这些恐龙不仅可以像其它类恐龙那样跑，而且也能爬树。他们是从骨头的连接方式了解到一点的。

约 65 万年前恐龙突然灭绝了。一些科学家认为它是突然到来的，当时一块太空巨石撞击了地球并扬起了太多灰尘遮蔽了天空。也有人认为地球变得太热以至于不再适于恐龙生活。没有人确切知道为什么和怎样恐龙在这么短的时间从地球上突然消失。

我们知道很多其他野生植物，动物，昆虫和鸟类最近已经灭绝。据联合国报告，在过去的 500 年大约 844 种动植物消失了。渡渡鸟是其中之一。它生活在毛里求斯岛，是一个非常友好的动物。请听一个渡渡鸟故事，以及它是如何从地球上消失的。

Unit 5 第五单元 音乐

THE BAND THAT WASN'T 并非乐队的乐队

Have you ever wanted to be part of a band as a famous singer or musician? Have you ever dreamed

of playing in front of thousands of people at a concert, at which everyone is clapping and appreciating your music? Do you sing karaoke and pretend you are a famous singer like Song Zuying or Lin Huan? To be honest, a lot of people attach great importance to becoming rich and famous. But just how do people form a band?

Many musicians meet and form a band because they like to write and play their own music. They may start as a group of high-school students, for whom practicing their music in someone's hours is the first step to fame. Sometimes they may play to passers-by in the street or subway so that they can earn some extra money for themselves or to pay for their instruments. Later they may give performances in pubs or clubs, for which they are paid in cash. Of course they hope to make records in a studio and sell millions of copies to become millionaires!

However, there was one band that started in a different way. It was called the Monkees and began as a TV show. The musicians were to play jokes on each other as well as play music, most of which was based loosely on the Beatles. The TV organizers had planned to find four musicians who could act as well as sing. They put an advertisement in a newspaper looking for rock musicians, but they could only find one who was good enough. They had to use actors for the other three members of the band.

As some of these actors could not sing well enough, they had to rely on other musicians to help them. So during the broadcasts they just pretended to sing. Anyhow their performances were humorous enough to be copied by clubs in order to get more familiar with them. Each week on TV, the Monkees would play and sing songs written by other musicians. However, after a year or so in which they became more serious about their work, the Monkees started to play and sing their own songs like a real band. Then they produced their own records and started touring and play their own music. In the USA they became even more popular than the Beatles and sold even more records. The band broke up about 1970, but happily the reunited in the mid-1980s. they produced a new record in 1996, with which they celebrated their former time as a real band.

你曾经想过要成为一个乐队里有名的歌手或音乐家吗？你是否曾梦想过在音乐会上面对成千上万的观众演唱，观众欣赏你的歌唱为你鼓掌吗？你唱卡拉 OK 时是否假装自己就是像宋祖英或刘欢一样著名的歌星吗？说实在的，很多人把名和利看得很重。那么，人们又是怎样一起组成乐队的呢？

许多音乐家聚在一起组成乐队，是因为他们喜欢自己作曲，演奏自己的音乐。他们开始可能是一组中学生，在某个人家里排练音乐是成名的第一步。有时他们可能在街上或地铁里为过路人演奏，这样他们可以为自己或自己要买的乐器多挣一些钱。后来，他们可能在酒吧或者俱乐部里演出，这样他们可以得到现金。当然，他们希望在录音棚里录音，然后卖掉上百万张碟，从而成为百万富翁。

然而，也有一个用不同方式组建起来的乐队。这支乐队叫“门基乐队”，它开始时是以电视节目表演的形式出现的。组成乐队的音乐人演奏音乐，还彼此打趣都笑。这些玩笑和音乐大多都在模仿“甲壳虫”乐队。电视制作人原计划想寻找四位会唱又会表演的乐手。他们在报纸上登了一则广告，想招摇滚乐手，但他们只招到一个满意的。乐队的其他三人只能用演员来代替。

因为这些演员中有些人唱得不是很好，他们不得不依靠队里的其他人帮助。所以在演出的时候他们只是假唱。不管怎样，他们的表演非常幽默以至于其他的乐队也开始模仿。他们非常走红使得歌迷们为了更加熟悉他们而成立了俱乐部。门基乐队每个星期都要在电视上演唱由别的音乐家创作的歌曲。然而，经过大约一年以后，门基乐队逐渐对自己的工作认真起来，他们开始像一支真正的乐队那样演唱自己创作的歌曲。然后他们录制自己的唱片，并且开始巡回表演他们自己的音乐。在美国，他们甚至比“甲壳虫”乐队还要受欢迎，出售的录音专辑还要多。“门基乐队”大约在 1970 年左右解散，但是令人高兴的是，到 80 年代中期他们再次聚首。在 1996 年，他们推出了一张新的专辑，像真正的乐队一样以此来庆祝他们以往的时光。

FREDDY THE FROG(II)

Not long after Freddy and the band became famous,they visited Britain on a brief tour.Fans showed their devotion by waiting for hours to get tickets for their concerts.Freddy was now quite confident when he went into a concert hall.He enjoyed singing and all the congratulations afterwards!His most exciting invitation was to perform on a programme called "Top of the Pops."He had to go to London,wear an expensive suit and give a performance to a TV camera.It felt very strange.But as soon as the programme was over,the telephones which were in the same room started ringing.Everybody was asking when they could see Freddy and his band again. They were truly stars.

Then things went wrong.Freddy and his band could not go out anywhere without being followed.Even when they wore sunglasses or beards people recognized them. Fans found them even when they went into the toilet.They tried to hide in the reading rooms of libraries,but it was useless.Someone was always there!Their personal life was regularly discussed by people who did not know them but talked as if they were close friends. At last feeling very upset and sensitive,Freddy and his band to which they were never to return,and went back to the lake.

在弗雷迪和乐队成名不久后,他们去英国旅游,年轻人都跑来看他们.歌迷们为了买到他们演唱会的票等了几小时.现在当弗雷迪一走进礼堂时就觉得很自信,他爱好唱歌及接下来的喝彩! 他最冲动的一次邀请是在一个叫“风行之颠”的节目里唱歌.那时他要去伦敦,穿贵西服在摄影机前表演.那让人感到很奇怪,但节目一完,房里电话响了,人人都问何时再与弗雷迪和乐队见面,他们真成明星了。

然而事情不是这样.若无人处处跟随,弗雷迪与乐队也不会离开.即使他们戴太阳镜或胡须别人也能认出他们他们就是去厕所也会被歌迷发明.他们想藏在图书馆阅览室也没用,那里总有人! 他们的隐私常被陌生人谈论,但谈论起来好像他们是好朋友一样.弗雷迪和他的乐队终于明白,他们应在还未觉得太痛苦之前就离开英国.所以他们离开英国再也不想回来他们又回到湖里

必修 3 unit1 第一单元 Festivals around the world

Festivals and celebrations 节日和庆典

Festivals and celebrations of all kinds have been held everywhere since ancient times.Most ancient

festivals would celebrate the end of cold weather,planting in spring and harvest in autumn.Sometimes celebratewould be held after hunters had caught animals.At that time people would starve if food was difficult to find,especially during the cold winter months.Today's festivals have many origins ,some religious,some seasonal, and some for special people or events.

Festivals of the Dead

Some festivals are held to honour the dead or to satisfy the ancestors,who might return either to help or to do harm.For the Japanese festival.Obon,people should go to clean graves and light incense in memory of their ancestors.They also light lamps and play music because they think that this will lead the ancestors back to earth.In Mexico,people celebrate the Day of the Dead in early November.On this impoutant feast day,people eat food in the shape of skulls and cakes with"bones"on them.They offer food,flowers and gifts to the dead.The Western holiday Halloween also had its origin in old beliefs about the return of the spirits of dead people. It is now a children's festival,when they can dress up and to to their neighbours'homes to ask for sweets.Ifthe neighbours do not give any sweets,the children might play a trick on them.

Festivals to Honour People

Festivals can also be held to honour famous people .The Dragon Boat Festival in China honours the famous ancient poet,Qu Yuan.In the USA Columbus Day is in memory of the arrival of Christopher Columbus in New World.India has a national festival on October 2 to honour Mohandas Gandhi,the leader who helped gain India's independence from Britain.

Harvest Festivals

Harvest and Thanksgiving festivals can be very happy events.People are grateful because their food is gathered for the winter and the agricultural work is over.In European countries,people will usually decorate churches and town halls with flowers and fruit,and will get together to have meals.Some people might win awards for their farm produce,like the biggest watermelon or the most handsome rooster.China and Japan have mid-autumn festivals,when people admire the moon and in China,enjoy mooncakes.

Spring Festivals

The most energetic and important festivals are the ones that look forward to the end of winter and to the coming of spring.At the Spring Festival in China,people eat dumplings,fish and meat and may give children lucky money in red paper.There are dragon dances and carnivals,and families celebrate the Lunar New Year together.Some Western countries have very exciting carnivals,which take place forty days before Easter,usually in February.These carnivals might include parades,dancing in the streets day and night,loud music and colourful clothing of all kinds.Easter is an important religious and social festival for Christians aroud the world.It celebrates the return of Jesus from the dead and the coming of spring and new life.Japan's Cherry Blossom Festival happens a little later.The country,

covered with cherry tree flowers, looks as though it is covered with pink snow.

People love to get together to eat , drink and have fun with each other.Festivals let us enjoy life,be proud of our customs and forget our work for a little while

自古以来,世界各地就有各种各样的节目和庆典。大多数古老的节日总是庆祝严寒的结束,春季的种植和秋天的收割。有时,在猎人捕获猎物后,也举行庆祝活动。在那个时代,如果食物难以找到,特别是在寒冷的冬月,人们就会挨饿,现在的节日有很多由来,一些是宗教上的,一些是季节性的,一些是纪念特殊的人和事件的。

亡灵节

些节目是为了纪念死者,或使祖先得到满足,因为祖先们有可能回到世上(给人们)提供帮助,也有可能带来危害。在日本盂兰盆节,人们要扫墓、烧香,以缅怀祖先。人们还点起灯笼,奏响乐曲,因为他们一位这样做可以把祖先引到世上。在墨西哥,亡灵节是在月初。在这个重要的节日里,人们会吃制成颅骨形状的食物,和装点有“骨头”的蛋糕。他们向亡者祭献食物、鲜花和礼品。西方的万圣节也源自人们古老的信念,以为亡者的灵魂会返回人间。万圣节如今成了孩子们的节目,这天他们可以乔装打扮上邻居家要糖吃。如果邻居什么糖也不给,那么孩子们就可以捉弄他们了。

纪念名人的节目

也有纪念名人的节目。中国的端午节(龙舟节),是纪念古代著名诗人屈原的。美国的哥伦布日是纪念克里斯托弗·哥伦布发现“新大陆”的日子。印度在 10 月 2 日有个全国性的节目,纪念莫汉达斯·甘地,他是帮助印度脱离英国而独立的领袖。

庆丰收的节日

收获与感恩节是非常喜庆的节日。越冬的粮食收集起来了,农活结束了,人们都心怀感激。在欧洲国家,人们通常用花果来装饰教堂和市政厅,在一起聚餐。有些人还可能因为他们的农产品(参加各种评选)而获奖,比如最大的西瓜或最帅的公鸡。中国和日本都有中秋节,这时,人们会赏月。在中国,人们还品尝月饼。

春天的节日

最富生气的而又最重要的节日,就是告别冬天,迎来春天的日子。中国人过春节要吃饺子、鱼和肉,还要给孩子们送红纸包着的压岁钱。(他们)舞龙灯、狂欢,全家人聚在一起欢庆阴历年。在一些西方国家有激动人心的狂欢节,通常在二月,复活节前的四十天。狂欢节期间,人们身着各种艳丽的节日盛装,伴随着鼓噪的音乐,在街头游行,昼夜跳舞。复活节是全世界基督教徒的一个重要的宗教和公众节日。它庆祝耶稣复活,也庆祝春天和新生命的到来。在晚些时候,日本就迎来了樱花节,(节日里)整个国度到处是盛开的樱花,看上去就像是覆盖了一层粉红色的雪。

人们喜欢聚在一起吃、喝、玩耍。节日让我们享受生活,让我们为自己的习俗而自豪,还可以暂时忘掉工作中的烦恼。

A SAD LOVE STORY 一段伤心的爱情故事

Li Fang was heart-broken. It was Valentine's Day and Hu Jin had said she would meet him at the coffee shop after work. But she didn't turn up. She could be with her friends right now laughing at him. She said she would be there at seven o'clock, and he thought she would keep her word. He had looked forward to meeting her all day, and now he was alone with his roses and chocolates, like a fool. Well, he was not going to hold his breath for her to apologize. He would drown his sadness in coffee.

It was obvious that the manager of the coffee shop was waiting for Li Fang to leave—he wiped the tables, then sat down and turned on the TV—just what Li Fang needed! A sad Chinese story about lost love.

The granddaughter of the Goddess of Heaven visited the earth. Her name was Zhinü, the weaving girl. While she was on earth she met the herd boy Niulang and they fell in love. ("Just like me and Hu Jin," thought Li Fang.) They got married secretly, and they were very happy. ("We could be like that," thought Li Fang.) When the Goddess of Heaven knew that her granddaughter was married to a human, she became very angry and made the weaving girl return to Heaven. Niulang tried to follow her, but the river of stars, the Milky Way, stopped him. Finding that Zhinü was heart-broken, her grandmother finally decided to let the couple cross the Milky Way to meet once a year. Magpies make a bridge of their wings so the couple can cross the river to meet on the seventh day of the seventh lunar month. People in China hope that the weather will be fine on that day, because if it is raining, it means that Zhinü is weeping and the couple won't be able to meet.

The announcer said, "This is the story of Qiqiao Festival. When foreigners hear about the story, they call it a Chinese Valentine's story. It's a fine day today, so I hope you can all meet the one you love."

As Li Fang set off for home, he thought, "I guess Hu Jin doesn't love me. I'll just throw these flowers and chocolates away. I don't want them to remind me of her." So he did.

As he sadly passed the tea shop on the corner on his way home, he heard a voice calling him. There was Hu Jin waving at him and calling, "why are you so late? I've been waiting for you for a long time! And I have a gift for you!"

What would he do? He had thrown away her Valentine gifts! She would never forgive him. This would not be a happy Valentine's Day!

李方的心都碎了。这天是情人节，胡瑾说她下班后会在咖啡馆和他见面的。可现在她却不见人影。也许她这会儿跟朋友在一起，正在取笑他呢。她说她会 7 点到达，他（李方）认为她会守信用的。他一整天都期盼着见到她，而现在他拿着玫瑰花和巧克力独自一人守候着，像个傻瓜一样。他不想屏息等她来道歉，他要用咖啡来解愁。

很明显，咖啡馆里的经理在等李方离开——他擦好桌子，然后坐下来，打开电视机。这正

合了李方的意！正在播出的是流传在中国的一个悲伤的爱情故事。

王母娘娘的外孙女下凡来到人间。她的名字叫织女，做纺织活的女孩。她在人间遇到了牛郎，两人相爱了。（李方想：“这正像我和胡瑾。”）于是他们秘密结了婚，并且生活得非常幸福。（李方想：“我们也可以像他们那样幸福的。”）当王母娘娘知道自己的外孙女跟一个世上的凡人结了婚，她勃然大怒，强行把织女带回到天宫。牛郎试图追随上去，却被银河阻挡住了。看到织女伤心的欲绝，最后王母娘娘决定让这对夫妻每年跨过银河相会一次。阴历七月七日，喜鹊们会展翅搭桥，让这对恋人过河相会。中国人都希望这天天气晴朗，因为如果碰到下雨，这就意味着织女在哭泣，两个恋人不能见面。

主持人说道：“这就是乞巧节的故事。外国朋友听到这个故事就将它称作中国的情人节故事。今天天气晴朗，我希望你们都能见到所爱的人。”

李方动身往家走，心里想：“我想胡瑾是不爱我了，就把这些鲜花和巧克力都扔了吧。我不想因它们想起她来。”于是他把花和巧克力都扔了。

在回家的路上，他神情失落地走过拐角处的一家茶馆，听到有人叫他的名字。那是胡瑾在向他招手，她喊道：“你为什么这么晚才来呢？我在这等你好久了！我有礼物送给你！”

他怎么办呢？他把情人节的礼物都扔了！她恐怕永远也不会原谅他了。这个情人节快乐不起来啦！

必修 3 UNIT2 第二单元 Healthy eating

COME AND EAT HERE (1) 到这儿来用餐吧 (1)

Wang Peng sat in his empty restaurant feeling very frustrated. It had been a very strange morning. Usually he got up early and prepared his menu of barbecued mutton kebabs, roast pork, stir-fried vegetables and fried rice. Then by lunchtime they would all be sold. By now his restaurant ought to be full of people. But not today! Why was that? What could have happened? He thought of his mutton, beef and bacon cooked in the hottest, finest oil. His cola was sugary and cold, and his ice cream was made of milk, cream and delicious fruit. "Nothing could be better," he thought. Suddenly he saw his friend Li Chang hurrying by. "Hello, Lao Li," he called. "Your usual?" But Li Chang seemed not to hear. What was the matter? Something terrible must have happened if Li Chang was not coming to eat in his restaurant as he always did.

Wang Peng followed Li Chang into a new small restaurant. He saw a sign in the window.

Tired of all that fat? Want to lose weight?

Come inside Yong Hui's slimming restaurant.

Only slimming foods served here.

Make yourself thin again!

Curiosity drove Wang Peng inside. It was full of people. The hostess, a very thin lady, came forward. "Welcome," she said. "My name is Yong Hui. I'll help you lose weight and be fit in two weeks if you eat here every day." Then she gave a menu to Wang Peng. There were few choices of food and drink on it: just rice, raw vegetables served in vinegar, fruit and water. Wang Peng was amazed at this and especially at the prices. It cost more than a good meal in his restaurant! He could not believe his eyes. He threw down the menu and hurried outside. On his way home he thought about his own menu. Did it make people fat? Perhaps he should go to the library and find out. He could not have Yong Hui getting away with telling people lies! He had better do some research!

At the library Wang Peng was surprised to find that his restaurant served far too much fat and Yong Hui's far too little. Even though her customers might get thin after eating Yong Hui's food, they were not eating enough energy-giving food to keep them fit. They would become tired very quickly. Wang Peng felt more hopeful as he drove back home. Perhaps

with a discount and a new sign he could win his customers back. So he wrote:

Want to feel fit and energetic?

Come and eat here! Discounts today!

Our food gives you energy all day!

The competition between the two restaurants was on!

到这里来用餐吧 (1)

王鹏做在他那空荡荡的餐馆里，感到很沮丧。这个上午真是怪的很。通常他很早就起床，准备他的菜肴——烤羊肉串、烤猪肉、炒菜和炒饭。然后到午饭时分，这些菜都会卖完。到了这个时候，他的餐馆本该宾客盈门的，但今天却不是！为什么会这样？发生了什么事？他想起了他用滚烫的精制油烹制的羊肉串、牛排和腊肉。他的可乐又甜又冷，冰激凌用牛奶、奶油和水果制成的。他想：“再没有比这些更好吃的了”。突然间，他看到自己的朋友李昌匆匆地走过。他喊道，“喂，老李！你还是吃老一套的吧？”可是李昌似乎没有听到。怎么会事呢？要是李昌不像往常那样到他店里吃饭，那问题一定严重了。

王鹏跟着李昌来到街尾一家新开张的小餐馆。窗子上的标牌写着这样一些字：“肥腻的东西吃厌了吧！想变瘦吗？请到雍慧减肥餐馆来。此地只供应减肥食品，让你恢复苗条！”

王鹏受到好奇心的驱使，走了进去。里面坐满了人。店老板，一个清瘦的女人走上前来道：“欢迎光临！我叫雍慧。您要是每天来这儿用餐，我可以保证在两周内去掉您的全部脂肪，”然后，她递给王鹏一张菜谱，菜谱上有很少几样食物和饮料：米饭、蘸醋吃的生蔬菜、水果和水。王鹏对此感到吃惊，特别是对它们的价格。这比在他的餐馆里吃一顿好饭花的钱还要多。他几乎不能相信他的眼睛！他甩了菜谱就急急往外走。在回家的路上，他想起了自己的菜谱。那些菜让人发胖了吗？也许他该去图书馆查查看。他可不能让雍慧哄骗人们后跑掉。他最好做一番调查！

在图书馆，王鹏很惊讶地发现，他餐馆的食物脂肪含量太高，而雍慧餐馆的食物脂肪含量又太低。尽管顾客吃她的餐馆里的饭会变得苗条，但他们摄取不到足够的热量来保持健康，很快就会感到疲乏。开车回家时，王鹏觉得又有了希望。也许写个新的标牌、打点折，能够帮他赢回顾客！于是他写下了他的标牌：

“想保持苗条、健康又精力旺盛吗？

到这里来用餐吧！今天打折！

我们的食物能够给您提供一整天所需的热量！”

这两家餐馆之间的竞争开始了！

COME AND EAT HERE(2)

A week later, Wang Peng's restaurant was nearly full and he felt happier. Perhaps he would be able to earn his living after all and not have to close his restaurant. He did not look forward to being in debt because his restaurant was no longer popular. He smiled as he welcomed some customers warmly at the door but the smile left his face when he saw Yong Hui walking in. She did not look happy but glared at him. "May I ask what you were doing in my restaurant the other day? I thought you were a new customer and now I know that you only came to spy on me and my menu," she shouted. "Please excuse me," he calmly explained, "I wanted to know where all my customers had gone last week. I followed one of them and found them in your restaurant. I don't want to upset you, but I found your menu so limited that I stopped worrying and started advertising the benefits of my food. Why don't you sit down and try a meal?"

Yong Hui agreed to stay and soon they were both enjoying dumplings and breast of chicken cooked with garlic. When they were served the ice cream, Yong Hui began to look ill. "I feel sick with all this fat and heavy food," she said, "I miss my vegetables and fruit." Wang Peng was enjoying a second plate of dumplings so he sighed. "Yes," he added, "and I would miss my dumplings and fatty pork. Don't you get tired quickly?" "Well, I do have to rest a lot," admitted Yong Hui. "But don't you think it would be better if you were a bit thinner? I'm sure you'd feel much healthier."

They began to talk about menus and balanced diets. "According to my research, neither your restaurant nor mine offers a balanced diet," explained Wang Peng. "I don't offer enough fibre and you don't offer enough body-building and energy-giving food. Perhaps we ought to combine our ideas and provide a balanced menu with food full of energy and fibre." So that is what they did. They served raw vegetables with the hamburgers and boiled the potatoes rather than frying them. They served fresh fruit with the ice cream. In this way they cut down the fat and increased the fibre in the meal. Their balanced diets became such a success that before long Wang Peng became slimmer and Yong Hui put on more weight. After some time the two found that their business cooperation had turned into a personal one. Finally they got married and lived happily ever after!

到这里来用餐吧（2）

一周后，王鹏的餐馆几乎坐满了人，他感到高兴些了。也许他仍然能够谋生，而不至于关闭自己的餐馆。他不希望由于餐馆不受欢迎而负债。他微笑地站在门口热情地迎接他的客人。但他一见到雍慧走进来，脸上的笑容马上就消失了。雍慧瞪着他，看上去不太高兴。“请问你那天到我餐馆里来干什么？”她大声问道，“我本来以为你是一位新顾客，现在我才发现你只是过来打探我和我的菜谱的。”王鹏心平气和地解释说，“很对不起，上周我想知道我的顾客是

上哪儿吃饭去了。我并不想让你心烦，不过我发现你的菜谱上的菜太少了，所以我也就不着急了，我也开始宣传我餐馆食物的好处。你为什么不坐下吃顿饭呢？”

雍慧同意留下来。没过一会，他们两人就津津有味地吃起饺子和蒜蓉及胸。当要吃冰激凌时，雍慧开始感到不舒服了。她说，“吃了这么多油腻的、难消化的食物，我都觉得恶心了。我想吃我的蔬菜和水果。”这时候，王鹏正在吃第二盘饺子，他叹了一口气，说道，“同样地，（如果在你的餐馆）我还想吃我的饺子和肥肉呢。你不觉得自己很容易疲乏么？”“是的，我的确经常需要休息；”雍慧承认了，“不过，难道你不认为你瘦一点更好么？我相信，那样你会觉得更健康些。”

他们开始谈论菜谱和平衡膳食的问题。王鹏解释道，“我的研究表明，你我两家所提供的都不是平衡膳食。我没有提供足够的纤维食物，而你提供的食物没有足够的营养和热量。也许我们应该把我们的想法综合起来，作出一份富于营养、热量和纤维的平衡食谱。”于是，他们就照此做了。他们用生蔬菜配汉堡包，煮土豆不是油炸土豆，还拿新鲜水果配上冰激凌。这样，他们减少了饭菜中的脂肪含量，增加了纤维素。他们的平衡食谱非常有效，王鹏很快就瘦了，而雍慧却胖了，过了不久，这两个人发现，他们生意上的合作变成了私人的合作了。最后，他们结了婚，过上了幸福美满的生活。

必修3 Unit 3 第三单元 The Million Pound Bank Note

THE MILLION POUND BANK NOTE 百万英镑

Act I, Scene 3

NARRATOR: It is the summer of 1903. Two old and wealthy brothers, Roderick and Oliver, have made a bet. Oliver believes that with a million pound bank note a man could survive a month in London. His brother Roderick doubts it. At this moment, they see a penniless young man wandering on the pavement outside their house. It is Henry Adams, an American businessman, who is lost in London and does not know what he should do.

RODERICK: Young man, would you step inside a moment, please?

HENRY: Who? Me, sir?

RODERICK: Yes, you.

OLIVER: Through the front door on your left.

HENRY: (A servant opens a door) Thanks.

SERVANT: Good morning, sir. Would you please come in? Permit me to lead the way, sir.

OLIVER: (Henry enters) Thank you, James. That will be all.

RODERICK: How do you do, Mr ... er ...?

HENRY: Adams. Henry Adams.

OLIVER: Come and sit down, Mr Adams.

HENRY: Thank you.

RODERICK: You're an American?

HENRY: That's right, from San Francisco.

RODERICK: How well do you know London?

HENRY: Not at all, it's my first trip here.

RODERICK: I wonder, Mr Adams, if you'd mind us asking a few questions.

HENRY: Not at all. Go right ahead.

RODERICK: May we ask what you're doing in this country and what your plans are?

HENRY: Well, I can't say that I have any plans. I'm hoping to find work. As a matter of fact, I landed in Britain by accident.

OLIVER: How is that possible?

HENRY: Well, you see, back home I had my own boat. About a month ago, I was sailing out of the bay ... (his eyes stare at what is left of the brother's dinner on table)

OLIVER: Well, go on.

HENRY: Oh, yes. Well, towards nightfall I found myself carried out to sea by a strong wind. It was all my fault. I didn't know whether I could survive until morning. The next morning I'd just about given myself up for lost when I was spotted by a ship.

OLIVER: And it was the ship that brought you to England.

HENRY: Yes. The fact is that I earned my passage by working as an unpaid hand, which accounts for my appearance. I went to the American embassy to seek help, but ... (The brothers smile at each other.)

RODERICK: Well, you mustn't worry about that. It's an advantage.

HENRY: I'm afraid I don't quite follow you, sir.

RODERICK: Tell us, Mr Adams, what sort of work did you do in America?

HENRY: I worked for a mining company. Could you offer me some kind of work here?

RODERICK: Patience, Mr Adams. If you don't mind, may I ask you how much money you have?

HENRY: Well, to be honest, I have none.

OLIVER: (happily) What luck! Brother, what luck! (claps his hands together)

HENRY: Well, it may seem lucky to you but not to me! On the contrary, in fact. If this is your idea of some kind of joke, I don't think it's very funny. (Henry stands up to leave) Now if you'll excuse me, I think I'll be on my way.

RODERICK: Please don't go, Mr Adams~ You mustn't think we don't care about you. Oliver, give him the letter.

OLIVER: Yes, the letter. (gets it from a desk and gives it to Henry like a gift) The letter.

HENRY: (taking it carefully) For me?

RODERICK: For you. (Henry starts to open it) Oh, no, you mustn't open it. Not yet. You can't open it until two o'clock.

HENRY: Oh, this is silly.

RODERICK: Not silly. There's money in it. (calls to the servant) James?

HENRY: Oh, no. I don't want your charity. I just want an honest job.

RODERICK: We know you're hard-working. That's why we've given you the letter. James, show Mr Adams out.

OLIVER: Good luck, Mr Adams.

HENRY: Well, why don't you explain what this is all about?

RODERICK: You'll soon know. (looks at the clock) In exactly an hour and a half.

SERVANT: This way, sir.

RODERICK: Mr Adams, not until 2 o'clock. Promise?

HENRY: Promise. Goodbye.

THE MILLION POUND BANK NOTE

Act I, Scene 4

(Outside a restaurant Henry looks at the envelope without opening it and decides to go in. He sits down at a table next to the front window.)

OWNER: (seeing Henry's poor appearance) That one's reserved. This way, please. (to the waiter) Take this gentleman's order, Horace.

HENRY: (after sitting down and putting the letter on the table) I'd like some ham and eggs and a nice big steak. Make it extra thick. I'd also like a cup of coffee and a pineapple dessert.

WAITER: Right, sir. I'm afraid it'll cost a large amount of money.

HENRY: I understand. And I'll have a large glass of beer.

WAITER: OK. (The waiter leaves and soon returns with all the food.)

HOSTESS: My goodness! Why, look at him. He eats like a wolf.

OWNER: We'll see if he's clever as a wolf, eh?

HENRY: (having just finished every bit of food) Ah, waiter. (waiter returns) Same thing again, please. Oh, and another beer.

WAITER: Again? Everything?

HENRY: Yes, that's right. (sees the look on the waiter's face) Anything wrong?

WAITER: No, not at all. (to the owner) He's asked for more of the same.

OWNER: Well, it is well-known that Americans like to eat a lot. Well, we'll have to take a chance. Go ahead and let him have it.

WAITER: (reading the bill after the meal) All right. That's two orders of ham and eggs, two extra thick steaks, two large glasses of beer, two cups of coffee and two desserts.

HENRY: (looking at the clock on the wall) Would you mind waiting just a few minutes?

WAITER: (in a rude manner) What's there to wait for?

OWNER: All right, Horace. I'll take care of this.

HENRY: (to owner) That was a wonderful meal. It's amazing how much pleasure you get out of tile simple things in life, especially if you can't have them for a while.

OWNER: Yes, very interesting. Now perhaps, sir, if you pay your bill I can help the other customers.

HENRY: (looking at the clock on the wall again) Well, I see it's two o'clock. (he opens the envelope and holds a million pound bank note in his hands. Henry is surprised but the owner and waiter are shocked) I'm very sorry. But ... I ... I don't have anything smaller.

OWNER: (still shocked and nervous) Well .. er ... just one moment. Maggie, look! (the hostess screams, the other customers look at her and she puts a hand to her mouth) Do you think it's genuine?

HOSTESS: Oh, dear, I don't know. I simply don't know.

OWNER: Well, I did hear that the Bank of England had issued two notes in this amount ... Anyway, I don't think it can be a fake. People would pay too much attention to a bank note of this amount. No thief would want that to happen.

HOSTESS: But he's in rags!

OWNER: Perhaps he's a very strange, rich man. (as if he has discovered something for the first time) Why, yes! That must be it!

HOSTESS: (hits her husband's arm) And you put him in the back of the restaurant! Go and see him at once.

OWNER: (to Henry) I'm so sorry, sir, so sorry, but I cannot change this bank note.

HENRY: But it's all I have on me.

OWNER: Oh, please, don't worry, sir. Doesn't matter at all. We're so very glad that you even entered our little eating place. Indeed, sir, I hope you'll come here whenever you like.

HENRY: Well, that's very kind of you.

OWNER: Kind, sir? No, it's kind of you. You must come whenever you want and have whatever you like. Just having you sit here is a great honour! As for the bill, sir, please forget it.

HENRY: Forget it? Well ... thank you very much. That's very nice of you.

OWNER: Oh, it's for us to thank you, sir and I do, sir, from the bottom of my heart. (The owner, hostess and waiter all bow as Henry leaves.)

第一幕，第3场

旁白：1903年的夏天。一对年老又富有的兄弟，罗德里克和奥利弗，打了一个赌。奥利弗认为，一个人靠一张百万英镑的钞票在伦敦能活一个月。他的兄弟罗德里克对此表示怀疑。这时，他们看见一个身无分文的年轻人在房子外面的人行道上游荡。他叫亨利·亚当斯，一个美国商人，在伦敦迷了路，不知道该怎么办。

罗德里克：年轻人，请进来一会儿，好吗？

亨利：先生，你叫谁来呀？是叫我吗？

罗德里克：是的，就是你。

奥利弗：从你左侧的前门进来。

亨利：（仆人给他打开门）谢谢。

仆人：早上好，先生，请进。先生，请让我来带路吧。

奥利弗：（亨利走进来）谢谢你，詹姆斯，没你的事了。

罗德里克：你好，先生，你贵姓？

亨利：亚当斯，亨利·亚当斯。

奥利弗：来，请坐，亚当斯先生。

亨利：谢谢。

罗德里克：你是美国人？

亨利：是的，从旧金山来。

罗德里克：你对伦敦熟悉吗？

亨利：一点儿也不熟，这是我第一次来伦敦。

罗德里克：亚当斯先生，不知你是否介意我们问几个问题？

亨利：不介意，请问吧。

罗德里克：可不可以问问，你在这个国家干点儿什么？你的计划又是什么呢？

亨利：嗯，谈不上有什么计划，我希望能找到工作。事实上，我在英国上岸是偶然的。

奥利弗：这怎么可能呢？

亨利：嗯，你看，在美国的时候，我有我自己的船。大约一个月前，我开船驶出海湾……（他的眼睛盯着兄弟俩留在餐桌上的残羹剩菜上）。

罗德里克：往下说呀。

亨利：哦，好的。嗯，傍晚时分我发现我被一阵大风刮到海上去了。这都是我的错。我不知道是否能活到早晨。第二天早上，我正感到绝望的时候，一艘海船发现了我。

罗德里克：正是那艘船把你带到了英国。

亨利：是的。事实上我靠做义工来顶替船费。这就是我为什么衣冠不整的原因了。我上美国大使馆求助，但是……（兄弟俩相顾而笑）。

罗德里克：嗯，这一点你倒不必担心，这还是优点呢。

亨利：对不起，先生，你的话我没有听懂。

奥利弗：亚当斯先生，请你告诉我们，你在美国干哪个行当？

亨利：我在一家矿业公司工作。你们能不能给我提供一份工作呢？

罗德里克：耐心点儿，亚当斯先生，如果你不介意，我能不能问问，你手头儿有多少钱？

亨利：嗯，老实说，我一分钱都没有了。

奥利弗：（高兴地）老兄，真走运！真有运气！（鼓起掌来）

亨利：嗯，这对你们来说可能是运气，但对我来说可不是。事实上，正好相反。如果你们认为这是一个笑话，我可不觉得很好笑。（亨利起身准备走）好了，请原谅，我想我该上路了。

罗德里克：亚当斯先生，请别走。你千万不要以为我们不在意你的感受。奥利弗，把信给他。

奥利弗：是，那封信。（从桌上把信拿起来，像送礼品一样递给亨利）给你信。

亨利：（小心翼翼地接过信）是给我吗？

罗德里克：是给你的。（亨利要拆信）啊，别拆，你不要拆，现在不是时候，到两点钟你才能打开。

亨利：噢，这真可笑。

罗德里克：这不可笑，这里边有钱呢。（叫仆人）詹姆斯？

亨利：噢，不，我不需要你们的施舍，我只要一份老老实实的工作。

罗德里克：我们知道你工作是很卖力的，这正是我们给你这封信的原因。詹姆斯，请送亚当斯先生出去。

奥利弗：祝你好运，亚当斯先生。

亨利：嗯，怎么不给我讲讲，这究竟是怎么回事呢？

罗德里克：你很快就会明白的，（看看钟）一个半小时以后。

仆 人：请这边走，先生。

罗德里克：亚当斯先生，两点钟以前不要拆信，答应吗？

亨利：答应，谢谢。再见！

— — Using Language — —

第一幕，第4场

（在餐馆外边，亨利看了看那封信的信封，没有打开，然后决定走进餐馆。他在靠近前边窗户的一张桌子旁坐了下来）

店 主：（看看亨利的那幅穷酸相）那张桌子有人订了。请到这边来。（对服务员）霍勒斯，来等先生点菜。

亨利：（坐定之后，把信放在桌上）我要火腿加鸡蛋，还来一块大牛排，要特厚的。我还要一杯咖啡，一份菠萝甜点。

服务员：好的，先生。恐怕这得花费一大笔钱。

亨利：我明白。我还要一大杯啤酒。

服务员：行。（服务员离开了，很快把所有的食物端上来）

女老板：天哪！你看他，吃起东西来就像头狼。

店主：瞧着吧，看他是不是像狼一样机灵？

亨利：（刚吃完了所有的东西）喂，服务员。（服务员过来了）同样的东西请再来一份，呃，再来一大杯啤酒。

服务员：每样东西都再来一份吗？

亨利：是，没错。（看着服务员脸上的神色）有什么不对吗？

服务员：不，没什么不对。（对店主）他再要一份同样的食物。

店主：嗯，许多美国人喜欢吃得多，这是大家都知道的。哦，我们得冒点儿风险。去吧，让他吃吧。

服务员：（饭后念账单）好了。两份火腿家鸡蛋，两份特厚的牛排，两大杯啤酒，两杯咖啡和两份甜点。

亨利：（望着墙上的挂钟）请等几分钟号码？

服务员：（很不耐烦地）还等什么？

店主：霍勒斯，行啦，这儿由我来照应。

亨利：（对店主）这餐饭吃得真棒。从生活中如此简单的东西之中竟能得到这么大的乐趣，真是令人吃惊，特别是当你暂时吃不到这些东西的时候。

店主：是的，很有意思。如果你现在能付账的话，我就可以去照顾别的顾客了。

亨利：（又望着墙上的挂钟）好了，我看两点钟到了。（他把信封拆开，那是一张百万英镑的钞票。亨利感到吃惊，店主和服务员惊呆了）很抱歉，我.....我.....我没有小一点儿的钞票。

店主：（还在发呆，而且有点儿紧张）好.....嗯.....，等一会儿。玛吉，来瞧瞧！（女老板尖叫起来，其他顾客都望着她，于是，她用手捂住了嘴巴）你看这张钞票是真的吗？

女老板：天哪，我不知道。我真不知道。

店主：嗯，我确实听说过英格兰银行发行了两张这样面值的钞票.....不管怎样，我觉得这不可能是假钞。这么大面值的钞票会特别引人注意的。小偷可不想引起别人的注意。

女老板：但是他穿得破破烂烂的！

店主：也许他十一哥非常怪异而富有的人。（如梦初醒似的）啊，对了，一定是这样的。

女老板：（在她丈夫的手臂上打了一下）是你把他带到餐厅后面去的，还不马上去看看他。

店主：（对亨利）先生，对不起，非常对不起，这张钞票我们找不开。

亨利：而我身上就只带了这张钞票。

店主：哎呀，先生，请别着急，一点儿也没关系。我们非常高兴你能走进我们这家小吃店。先生，真的，我希望您随时光临。

亨利：这，你太好了。

店主：我太好了？不，先生，是您太好了。您什么时候想来就来，想吃什么就吃什么。您就是在这儿坐一下也是我们莫大的荣幸！至于说账单嘛，先生，请把它忘了吧。

亨利：忘了它？喔.....，那就太谢谢了。你太好了。

店主：啊，先生，该是我们谢谢您呢。先生，我从心底里感谢您。

（当亨利离开的时候，店主、女老板和服务员都一齐向他鞠躬）

必修3 Unit 4 第四单元 Astronomy:the science of the stars

HOW LIFE BEGAN ON THE EARTH 地球上生命的起源

No one knows exactly how the earth began, as it happened so long ago. However, according to a widely accepted theory, the universe began with a "Big Bang" that threw matter in all directions. After that, atoms began to form and combine to create stars and other bodies.

For several billion years after the "Big Bang", the earth was still just a cloud of dust. What it was to become was uncertain until between 4.5 and 3.8 billion years ago when the dust settled into a solid globe. The earth became so violent that it was not clear whether the shape would last or not. It exploded loudly with fire and rock. They were intimate to produce carbon, nitrogen, water vapour and other gases, which were to make the earth's atmosphere. What is even more important is that as the earth cooled down, water began to appear on its surface.

Water had also appeared on other planets like Mars but, unlike the earth, it had disappeared later. It was not immediately obvious that water was to be fundamental to the development of life. What many scientists believe is that the continued presence of water allowed the earth to dissolve harmful gases and acids into the oceans and seas. This produced a chain reaction, which made it possible for life to develop.

Many millions of years later, the first extremely small plants began to appear on the surface of the water. They multiplied and filled the oceans and seas with oxygen, which encouraged the later development of early shellfish and all sorts of fish. Next, green plants began to grow on land. They were followed in time by land animals. Some were insects. Others, called amphibians, were able to live on land as well as in the water. Later when the plants grew into forests, reptiles appeared for the first time. They produced young generally by laying eggs. After that, some huge animals, called dinosaurs, developed. They laid eggs too and existed on the earth for more than 140 million years. However, 65 million years ago the age of the dinosaurs ended. Why they suddenly disappeared still remains a mystery. This disappearance made possible the rise of mammals on the earth. These animals were different from all life forms in the past, because they gave birth to young baby animals and produced milk to feed them.

Finally about 2.6 million years ago some small clever animals, now with hands and feet, appeared and spread all over the earth. Thus they have, in their turn, become the most important animals on the planet. But they are not looking after the earth very well. They are putting too much carbon dioxide into the atmosphere, which prevents heat from escaping from the earth into space. As a result of this, many scientists believe the earth may become too hot to live on. So whether life will continue on the earth for millions of years to come will depend on whether this problem can be solved.

没有人确切知道地球是怎样开始形成的，因为在很早很早以前它就形成了。然而，一种普遍为人们所接受的理论是：宇宙起源于一次大爆炸，这次大爆炸将物质投射到四面八方。然后，原子开始形成并结合成恒星和其他天体。

大爆炸后好几十亿年过去了，但地球还只是一团尘埃。随后它会变成什么没人能知道，直到 38-45 亿年前，这团尘埃才慢慢地形成一个固体的球状物。地球（开始）变得激烈动荡，不

知道这个固体形状是否会继续存在下去。它（地球）猛烈的爆炸喷出了烈火与岩石。最终产生了碳、氮气、水蒸气和其他多种气体，从而形成了地球的大气层。更为重要的是，地球冷却了下来，地球的表面就开始出现了水。

在火星这些其他行星上都出现了水，但和地球不同的是，这些水后来都消失了。水会对生命的发展起关键作用，这一点在当时并不明显。很多科学家相信，由于地球表面上长期有水存在，它使得地球得以把有害气体和酸性物质溶解在海洋里。这就产生了一系列的反应，使得生命就有可能开始发展了。

好几百万年以后，水的表面开始出现了极小的植物。它们繁殖起来就使得早期的海洋充满了氧气，这为早期的贝类及其他各种鱼类的发育进一步创造了条件。接着，绿色是植物开始出现在陆地上。随后，陆地上出现了动物，其中有一些是昆虫，另外一些叫两栖动物，它们一般是通过孵蛋而繁衍后代的。再后来一些叫做恐龙的巨型动物出现了。它们也生蛋，在地球上生存了一亿四千多年。然而，六千五百万年前，恐龙时代结束了。它们为什么会突然灭绝至今仍是谜。恐龙的灭绝使地球上哺乳动物的产生有了可能。哺乳动物不同于以往所有的生物形式，因为它们能从体内生产出幼仔并给幼仔哺乳。

最后，大约 260 万年前，一些小巧聪明、长着手脚的动物出现了，它们散布在地球的各个地方。于是，他们接着成为了这个行星上最重要的动物。然而，他们对地球却并不怎么在意。它们把过多的二氧化碳释放到大气层中，这使得地球上的热不能释放到太空中去。因此很多科学家相信地球可能会因此变得太热而不适合生物的生存。所以，在未来的数百万年中，生命能否在地球上延续取决于这个问题能否得到解决。

A VISIT TO THE MOON 月球之旅

Last month I was lucky enough to have a chance to make a trip into space with my friend Li Yanping, an astronomer. We visited the moon in our spaceship!

Before we left, Li Yanping explained to me that the force of gravity would change three times on our journey and that the first change would be the most powerful. Then we were off. As the rocket rose into the air, we were pushed back into our seats because we were trying to escape the pull of the earth's gravity. It was so hard that we could not say anything to each other. Gradually the weight lessened and I was able to talk to him. "Why is the spaceship not falling back to the earth? On the earth if I fall from a tree I will fall to the ground." I asked. "We are too far from the earth now to feel its pull," he explained, "so we feel as if there is no gravity at all. When we get closer to the moon, we shall feel its gravity pulling us, but it will not be as strong a pull as the earth's." I cheered up immediately and floated weightlessly around in our spaceship cabin watching the earth become smaller and the moon larger.

When we got there, I wanted to explore immediately. "Come on," I said. "If you are right, my mass will be less than on the earth because the moon is smaller and I will be able to move more freely. I might even grow taller if I stay here long enough. I shall certainly weigh less!" I laughed and climbed down the steps from the spaceship. But when I tried to step forward, I found I was carried twice as far as on the earth and fell over. "Oh dear," I cried, "walking does need a bit of practice now that gravity has changed." After a while I got the hang of it and we began to enjoy ourselves.

Leaving the moon's gravity was not as painful as leaving the earth's. But returning to the earth was very frightening. We watched, amazed as fire broke out on the outside of the spaceship as the earth's gravity increased. Again we were pushed hard into our seats as we came back to land. "That was very exhausting but very exciting too," I said. "Now I know much more about gravity! Do you think we could visit some stars next time?" "Of course," he smiled, "which star would you like to go to?"

我的朋友李彦平是一位宇航员。上个月我有幸得到一个机会同他一起去太空旅行。我们乘宇宙飞船参观了月球。

在启程以前，李彦平向我解释说，在我们的航行中会有三次引力的改变，而第一次的改变将是最强的。随后我们就起航了。随着火箭徐徐升空，我们慢慢逃离地球的引力。但这种引力太强了，把我们重重地向后推在座位上，以至于我们彼此间都不能说话了。随后，这个力量慢慢减小，我才能够同他讲话。我问道：“为什么太空船不会向后朝地球的方向落下去呢？在地球上的时候，如果我从书上掉下来，总会朝地上落下去的。”李彦平解释说：“现在我们离地球太远了，感觉不到地球的拉力，所以我们好像一点儿也感觉不到地球引力了。当我们更接近月球时，就会感到月球的引力在拉我们。但是，月球的引力不像地球的引力那么大。”我立刻感到很高兴，由于失重我在太空舱里飘来飘去，我望着（身后的）地球越来越小，而（前方的）月球越来越大。

我们到达月球时，我就想立即进行探测。“来吧，”我说，“要是你讲得对，我的重量就会比地球小，而我就能更自由地活动了。如果我在月球上呆的时间足够长的话，我甚至可能长得更高，我的体重肯定也会变得更轻！”我笑着从火箭的阶梯上爬下来。而当我试着向前迈步的时候，我发觉我被送出去很远，步子的跨度竟然是在地球上的两倍，因而我摔倒了。“天哪，”我大声说，“重力改变了，看来走路也的确需要练一练了。”过了一会儿，我才掌握了走路的诀窍，这才开始感到自如了。

摆脱月球引力不想摆脱地球引力那样痛苦。但是返回到地球的经历却是非常吓人的。我们惊奇地看着，随着丢引力的增加，宇宙飞船的外层燃烧起火。当我们回到地面时，我们又感到被重重地推到在座位上。我说道：“真是精疲力竭了，但也很激动人心。关于引力，我现在就懂得更多了。你认为下次我们可以上星球上去参观吗？”“当然可以，”他笑着说，“你想到那颗星球上去呢？”

必修 3 Unit 5 Canada-"The True North"

A TRIP ON "THE TRUE NORTH"“真北方”之旅

Li Daiyu and her cousin Liu Qian were on a trip to Canada to visit their cousins in Montreal on the Atlantic coast. Rather than take the aeroplane all the way, they decided to fly to Vancouver and then take the train west to east across Canada. The thought that they could cross the whole continent was exciting.

Their friend, Danny Lin, was waiting at the airport. He was going to take them and their baggage to catch "The True North", the cross-Canada train. On the way to the station, he chatted

about their trip. "You're going to see some great scenery. Going eastward, you'll pass mountains and thousands of lakes and forests, as well as wide rivers and large cities. Some people have the idea that you can cross Canada in less than five days, but they forget the fact that Canada is 5,500 kilometres from coast to coast. Here in Vancouver, you're in Canada's warmest part. People say it is Canada's most beautiful city, surrounded by mountains and the Pacific Ocean. Skiing in the Rocky Mountains and sailing in the harbour make Vancouver one of Canada's most popular cities to live in. Its population is increasing rapidly. The coast north of Vancouver has some of the oldest and most beautiful forests in the world. It is so wet there that the trees are extremely tall, some measuring over 90 metres."

That afternoon aboard the train, the cousins settled down in their seats. Earlier that day, when they crossed the Rocky Mountains, they managed to catch sight of some mountain goats and even a grizzly bear and an eagle. Their next stop was Calgary, which is famous for the Calgary Stampede. Cowboys from all over the world come to compete in the Stampede. Many of them have a gift for riding wild horses and can win thousands of dollars in prizes.

After two days' travel, the girls began to realize that Canada is quite empty. At school, they had learned that most Canadians live within a few hundred kilometres of the USA border, and Canada's population is only slightly over thirty million, but now they were amazed to see such an empty country. They went through a wheat-growing province and saw farms that covered thousands of acres. After dinner, they were back in an urban area, the busy port city of Thunder Bay at the top of the Great Lakes. The girls were surprised at the fact that ocean ships can sail up the Great Lakes. Because of the Great Lakes, they learned, Canada has more fresh water than any other country in the world. In fact, it has one-third of the world's total fresh water, and much of it is in the Great Lakes.

That night as they slept, the train rushed across the top of Lake Superior, through the great forests and southward towards Toronto.

李黛予和她表妹刘倩要去加拿大大西洋海岸的蒙特利尔市看望她们的表兄妹们。她们不想一路乘飞机，她们决定飞到温哥华，再从西海岸乘火车横穿加拿大到达东海岸。要横贯整个大陆的想法很是令人兴奋。

她们的朋友林丹尼在机场等候她们。他要带着她们和行李到火车站乘坐横穿加拿大的“真北方”号列车。在去火车站的路上，林丹尼聊起了她们的旅程：“你们沿途将会看到美丽壮阔的风景。向东一直走，你们会经过一座座山脉，上千个湖泊、森林，还有宽阔的河流和许多大城市。有人想在不到五天的时间里横穿加拿大，他们忘了加拿大从东海岸到西海岸共有 5,500 公里。这儿，温哥华，是加拿大最温暖的地方。人们说温哥华是加拿大最美丽的城市，被大山和太平洋环抱。落基山可以滑雪，海港供你扬帆，这些使得温哥华成为加拿大最受欢迎的居住城市之一。这个城市的人口增长很快。在温哥华北面的海岸上保存了最古老、最美丽的森林。那儿的湿度很大，所以树都长得特别高，一些高达 90 多米。”

那天下午表姐俩才登上了火车落了座。火车先是穿越落基山脉，她们设法看到了野山羊，甚至还看到了一只大灰熊和一只鹰。她们的下一站就是卡尔加里，这个城市因“大西部赛马会”而闻名。来自世界各地的牛仔们来参加赛马会比赛。他们中许多人都有骑野马的本领，他们能赢得几千美元的奖金。

两天以后，她们开始意识到加拿大人烟稀少。他们在学校学过，大多数加拿大人定居在靠近美国几百英里的边境地带，加拿大的人口也就是三千万多一点儿。但是现在看到这么空旷的国家，她们很惊讶。火车穿过一个种植小麦的省份，她们看到了面积有数千英亩的农场。晚饭后她们又回到城市，位于五大湖区顶端的繁忙的港口城市桑得贝。巨大的海轮可以开到五大湖，让表姐妹俩感到吃惊。她们知道，因为有五大湖，加拿大的淡水比世界上任何其他国家都多。事实上，加拿大拥有全世界三分之一的淡水量，其中大部分都蓄在五大湖泊里。

那天夜里她们睡着了，火车越过苏必利尔湖，穿过大森林，朝南向多伦多飞驰着。

“THE TRUE NORTH”FROM TORONTO TO MONTREAL

多伦多—蒙特利尔的“真北方”列车

The next morning the bushes and maple trees outside their windows were red, gold and orange, and there was frost on the ground, confirming that fall had arrived in Canada.

Around noon they arrived in Toronto, the biggest and most wealthy city in Canada. They were not leaving for Montreal until later, so they went on a tour of the city. They went up the tall CN Tower and looked across the lake. In the distance, they could see the misty cloud that rose from the great Niagara Falls, which is on the south side of the lake. The water flows into the Niagara River and over the falls on its way to the sea.

They saw the covered stadium, home of several famous basketball teams. As they walked north from the harbour area, Li Daiyu said, "Lin Fei, one of my mother's old schoolmates, lives here. I should phone her from a telephone booth."

They met Lin Fei around dusk in downtown Chinatown, one of the three in Toronto. Over dinner at a restaurant called The Pink Pearl, the cousins chatted with Lin Fei, who had moved to Canada many years earlier. "We can get good Cantonese food here," Lin Fei told them, "because most of the Chinese people here come from South China, especially Hong Kong. It's too bad you can't go as far as Ottawa, Canada's capital. It's approximately four hundred kilometres northeast of Toronto, so it would take too long."

The train left late that night and arrived in Montreal at dawn the next morning. At the station, people everywhere were speaking French. There were signs and ads in French, but some of them had English words in smaller letters. "We don't leave until this evening," said Liu Qian. "Let's go downtown. Old Montreal is close to the water." They spent the afternoon in lovely shops and visiting artists in their workplaces beside the water. As they sat in a buffet restaurant looking over the broad St Lawrence River, a young man sat down with them.

"Hello, my name is Henri. I'm a student at the university nearby," he said, "and I was wondering where you are from." The girls told him they were on a train trip across Canada and that they had only one day in Montreal. "That's too bad," he said. "Montreal is a city with wonderful restaurants and clubs. Most of us speak both English and French, but the city has French culture and traditions. We love good coffee, good bread and good music."

That night as the train was speeding along the St Lawrence River toward the Gulf of St Lawrence and down to the distant east coast, the cousins dreamed of French restaurants and red

maple leaves.

第二天早上，在她们车窗外到处是灌木丛和枫树，挂满朱红、赤金和橘黄色的叶子，地面覆盖上一层薄霜，表明秋天已经来到了加拿大。中午时分，她们来到多伦多—加拿大最大、最富有的城市。她们要晚些时候才动身去蒙特利尔，因此就在多伦多市内游览了一番。她们登上了高高的加拿大国家电视塔，俯瞰着下面的湖水。远处，她们可以看到湖的南边尼亚加拉大瀑布上方升腾着的雾霭。湖水流入尼亚加拉河，再经过大瀑布，流向大海。

她们看到了加顶的大型运动场，那是几支著名的篮球队的驻地。当她们从港口区向北走的时候，李黛予说：“我妈妈的老同学林菲住在这里，我该到电话亭去给她打个电话。”

大约黄昏时分，她们在市区的中国城遇到了林菲，这时多伦多三个中国城中的一个。在一个名叫“海珠酒楼”的餐馆里用餐时，表姐妹和许多年前就移居加拿大的林菲闲聊了起来。林菲告诉她们：“我们在这里可以吃到很好的广东菜，因为这里的大多数中国人来自中国南方，尤其是香港。很可惜你们不能一只走到建安大的首都渥太华。它在多伦多东北方约 400 公里，要去那儿花时间就太多了。”

火车在那夜晚些时候起程了，第二天黎明到达了蒙特利尔。火车站里，人们到处说的是法语。指示牌和广告也都是法文的，但有些标注了小字体的英文。刘倩说：“我们要到傍晚才动身，不如到市区去走走。”整个下午她们穿梭于布局可爱的商店，还摆放了水边工作坊里的艺术家。当她们坐在咖啡馆里眺望广阔的圣劳伦斯河时，一个年轻人坐在了她们的身边。

“你们好，我叫亨利，是这里的大学生。”他说：“请问你们从哪里来？”姑娘们告诉他，她们是坐火车来旅游的，要横穿加拿大，在蒙特利尔只待一天。他说：“这太糟糕了，蒙特利尔这个城市有极好的餐馆和俱乐部。我们大多数人既说英语也说法语，但是这座城市具有法国文化和传统。我们喜欢好咖啡，好面包和好音乐。”

那天晚上，火车沿着圣劳伦斯河疾驰，朝圣劳伦斯湾驶去，一直开到远方的东海岸，姐妹两个做梦都在想着法国餐馆和红色枫叶。

必修 4 Unit 1 第一单元 女人的成就

A STUDENT OF AFRICAN WILDLIFE 非洲野生动物研究者

It is 5:45 am and the sun is just rising over Gombe National Park in East Africa. Following Jane's way of studying chimps, our group are all going to visit them in the forest. Jane has studied these families of chimps for many years and helped people understand how much they behave like humans. Watching a family of chimps wake up is our first activity of the day. This means going back to the place where we left the family sleeping in a tree the night before. Everybody sits and waits in the shade of the trees while the family begins to wake up and move off. Then we follow as they wander into the forest. Most of the time, chimps either feed or clean each other as a way of

showing love in their family. Jane warns us that our group is going to be very tired and dirty by the afternoon and she is right. However, the evening makes it all worthwhile. We watch the mother chimp and her babies play in the tree. Then we see them go to sleep together in their nest for the night. We realize that the bond between members of a chimp family is as strong as in a human family.

Nobody before Jane fully understood chimp behaviour. She spent years observing and recording their daily activities. Since her childhood she had wanted to work with animals in their own environment. However, this was not easy. When she first arrived in Gombe in 1960, it was unusual for a woman to live in the forest. Only after her mother came to help her for the first few months was she allowed to begin her project. Her work changed the way people think about chimps. For example, one important thing she discovered was that chimps hunt and eat meat. Until then everyone had thought chimps ate only fruit and nuts. She actually observed chimps as a group hunting a monkey and then eating it. She also discovered how chimps communicate with each other, and her study of their body language helped her work out their social system.

For forty years Jane Goodall has been outspoken about making the rest of the world understand and respect the life of these animals. She has argued that wild animals should be left in the wild and not used for entertainment or advertisements. She has helped to set up special places where they can live safely. She is leading a busy life but she says: "Once I stop, it all comes crowding in and I remember the chimps in laboratories. It's terrible. It affects me when I watch the wild chimps. I say to myself, 'Aren't they lucky?'" And then I think about small chimps in cages though they have done nothing wrong. Once you have seen that you can never forget ..."

She has achieved everything she wanted to do: working with animals in their own environment, gaining a doctor's degree and showing that women can live in the forest as men can. She inspires those who want to cheer the achievements of women.

清晨 5 点 45 分，太阳刚从东非的贡贝国家公园的上空升起。我们一行人准备按照简研究黑猩猩的方法去森林里拜访它们。简研究这些黑猩猩家族已经很多年了，她帮助人们了解了黑猩猩跟人类的行为是多么的相似。我们当天的首要任务就是观察黑猩猩一家是如何醒来的。这意味着我们要返回前一天晚上我们离开时黑猩猩一家睡觉的大树旁。大家坐在树荫下等待着，这时候猩猩们睡醒了，准备离开。在大部分的时间里，黑猩猩或互相喂食，或彼此擦身，这在它们家族里是表达爱的方式。简预先提醒我们，到下午的时候我们就会又脏又累。她说对了，但是到傍晚的时分我们就觉得这一切都是值得的。我们看到黑猩猩妈妈跟它们的幼子们在树上玩耍，后来看见他们一起回窝睡觉了。我们明白了猩猩家族成员之间的联系像人类家庭一样紧密。

在简之前没有人全面了解黑猩猩的行为。她花了多年的时间来参观记录黑猩猩的日常活动。从孩童时代起，简就想在动物生活的环境中研究它们。但是，这不是一件简单的事。当她 1960 年最初到贡贝时，对女性来说，住进大森林还是很稀罕的事情。她母亲头几个月来帮过她的忙，这才使她得以开始了自己的计划。她的工作改变了人们对黑猩猩的看法。比方说，她的一个重要发现是黑猩猩猎食动物，在此之前，人们一直认为黑猩猩只吃水果和坚果。她曾经亲眼看到过一群黑猩猩捕杀一只猴子，然后把它吃掉。她还发现了黑猩猩之间是如何交流的，而她对黑猩猩身势语的研究帮助她勾勒出黑猩猩的社会体系。

40 年来，简·古道尔一直在呼吁是世人了解并尊重这些动物的生活。她主张应该让野生动物留在野外生活，而不能用于娱乐或广告。她还为黑猩猩建起了可以安全生活的专门的保护区。她的生活是忙忙碌碌的，然而正如她所说的：

“我一旦停下来，所有的一切都会涌上心头。我就会想起实验室的黑猩猩。太可怕了。每当我看着野生黑猩猩时，这个念头总是萦绕着我。我会对自己说 " 难道它们不幸运吗？ " 然后我就想起那些没有任何过错却被关在笼子里的小黑猩猩。一旦你看到这些，你就永远不会忘记……”

简已经得到了她所想要得到的一切：在动物的栖息地工作：获得博士学位：还向世人证明女人和男人一样能够在森林生活。她激励着人们为妇女们的成就而欢呼喝彩。

WHY NOT CARRY ON HER GOOD WORK? 为什么不继续她的事业？

I enjoyed English, biology, and chemistry at school, but which one should I choose to study at university? I did not know the answer until one evening when I sat down at the computer to do some research on great women of China.

By chance I came across an article about a doctor called Lin Qiaozhi, a specialist in women's diseases. She lived from 1901 to 1983. It seemed that she had been very busy in her chosen career, travelling abroad to study as well as writing books and articles. One of them caught my eye. It was a small

book explaining how to cut the death rate from having and caring for babies. She gave some simple rules to follow for keeping babies clean, healthy and free from sickness. Why did she write that? Who were the women that Lin Qiaozhi thought needed this advice? I looked carefully at the text and

realized that it was intended for women in the countryside. Perhaps if they had an emergency they could not reach a doctor.

Suddenly it hit me how difficult it was for a woman to get medical training at that time. That was a generation when girls' education was always placed second to boys'. Was she so much cleverer than anyone else? Further reading made me realize that it was hard work and determination as well as her gentle nature that got her into medical school. What made her succeed later on was the kindness and consideration she showed to all her patients. There was story after story of how Lin Qiaozhi, tired after a day's work, went late at night to deliver a baby for a poor family who could not pay her.

By now I could not wait to find out more about her. I discovered that Lin Qiaozhi had devoted her whole life to her patients and had chosen not to have a family of her own. Instead she made sure that about 50,000 babies were safely delivered. By this time I was very excited. Why not study at medical college like Lin Qiaozhi and carry on her good work? It was still not too late for me to improve my studies, prepare for the university entrance examinations, and....

上中学时我喜欢英语、生物和化学，但是我进大学该学哪门专业呢？直到有一天晚上坐在电脑旁研究中国的伟大女性时，我才有了答案。

很偶然地，我看见了一篇关于林巧稚的文章。她是妇科专家，1901 年出生，1983 年去世。林巧稚似乎一直都在为自己选择事业而奔忙，去国外留学，也写了很多书和文章。其中有

一本书引起了我的注意。这是一本小书，介绍如何从妇女怀孕到护理婴儿的过程中降低死亡率。她提出了一些可以遵循的简单的做法，保持婴儿清洁和健康，让他们远离疾病。她为什么要写这些东西呢？林巧稚认为那些妇女会需要这些忠告呢？我细细地看了这篇文章，了解到那是为农村妇女写的。也许他们在遇到紧急情况时可能找不到医生。

突然我想起，在那个年代，一个女子去学医是多么困难啊！那可是一个女性教育总是排在男性之后的年代。难道她比别人要聪明的多？进一步的阅读使我了解到，是苦干、决心和善良使她走进了医学院的大门。后来使她成功的是她对所有病人献出的爱心和体贴。数不胜数故事讲述着林巧稚如何在劳累的一天之后，又在深夜去为贫苦家庭的产妇接生，而这些家庭是不可能给她报酬的。

现在我迫不及待地想多了解一些有关她的情况。我发现林巧稚把必胜奉献给了病人，而自己却选择了独身。她确保了大约五万名婴儿的安全出生。这时候，我非常激动。为什么不像林巧稚那样去读医学院，继续她的事业呢？现在努力提高学习成绩、准备大学入学考试还不算晚……

必修 4 Unit 2 第二单元 耕作土地

A PIONEER FOR ALL PEOPLE 造福全人类的先驱者

Although he is one of China's most famous scientists, Yuan Longping considers himself a farmer, for he works the land to do his research. Indeed, his sunburnt face and arms and his slim, strong body are just like those of millions of Chinese farmers, for whom he has struggled for the past five decades. Dr Yuan Longping grows what is called super hybrid rice. In 1974, he became the first agricultural pioneer in the world to grow rice that has a high output. This special strain of rice makes it possible to produce one-third more of the crop in the same fields. Now more than 60% of the rice produced in China each year is from this hybrid strain.

Born into a poor farmer's family in 1930, Dr Yuan graduated from Southwest Agricultural College in 1953. Since then, finding ways to grow more rice has been his life goal. As a young man, he saw the great need for increasing the rice output. At that time, hunger was a disturbing problem in many parts of the countryside. Dr Yuan searched for a way to increase rice harvests without expanding the area of the fields. In 1950, Chinese farmers could produce only fifty million tons of rice. In a recent harvest, however, nearly two hundred million tons of rice was produced. These increased harvests mean that 22% of the world's people are fed from just 7% of the farmland in China. Dr Yuan is now circulating his knowledge in India, Vietnam and many other less developed countries to increase their rice harvests. Thanks to his research, the UN has more tools in the battle to rid the world of hunger. Using his hybrid rice, farmers are producing harvests twice as large as before.

Dr Yuan is quite satisfied with his life. However, he doesn't care about being famous. He feels it gives him less freedom to do his research. He would much rather keep time for his hobbies. He enjoys listening to violin music, playing mah-jong, swimming and reading. Spending money on

himself or leading a comfortable life also means very little to him. Indeed, he believes that a person with too much money has more rather than fewer troubles. He therefore gives millions of yuan to equip others for their research in agriculture.

Just dreaming for things, however, costs nothing. Long ago Dr Yuan had a dream about rice plants as tall as sorghum. Each ear of rice was as big as an ear of corn and each grain of rice was as huge as a peanut. Dr Yuan awoke from his dream with the hope of producing a kind of rice that could feed more people. Now, many years later, Dr Yuan has another dream: to export his rice so that it can be grown around the globe. One dream is not always enough, especially for a person who loves and cares for his people.

尽管是中国最著名的科学家之一，袁隆平仍然认为自己是个农民，因为他在田间耕作，进行科学研究。的确，他那被太阳晒的黝黑的脸庞和手臂，以及他那消瘦而又结实的身躯，就跟其他千百万中国农民一样，过去 50 年来，他一直在努力帮助他们。袁隆平博士种植的是被称为“超级杂交水稻”的稻种。1974 年，他称为世界上第一位种植高产水稻的农业先锋。这种特殊的稻种使得同样的田地能多收获三分之一的产量。如今，中国每年生产的稻米有 60% 以上出自这种杂交水稻。

袁博士 1930 年出生，1953 年毕业于西南农学院。从那以后，找到水稻高产的方法就成为他一生的目标。年轻时，他就看到稻田增产的巨大需求。当时，饥饿时许多农村地区面临的严重问题。袁博士要在不增加土地面积的基础上寻求达到增收稻谷的途径。1950 年，中国农民只能生产五千万吨稻谷，而近来却生产了将近两亿吨稻谷。这一粮食产量的增加意味着中国仅仅 7% 的耕地养活了世界 22% 的人口。袁博士现在在印度、越南和其他欠发达国家船舶提高水稻产量的知识。由于他的研究，联合国在消除世界饥饿的战斗中有了更多的方法。用他的杂交水稻种子，农民们种出的粮食比以前多了一倍。

袁博士对生活非常满意。但是，他对成名并不在意，并且觉得出名后搞科研就不那么自由了。他宁愿把时间花在自己的业余爱好上。他喜欢听小提琴乐曲、搓麻将、游泳和读书。在自己身上花钱或者享受舒适的生活对袁博士来说意义也不大。事实上，他认为一个人有了太多钱，他的麻烦事只会更多不会更少。于是，他拿出好几百万元帮忙其他人进行农业科学研究。梦想是不花本钱的。很久以前，袁博士曾在梦里看到水稻长得像高粱一样高，稻穗跟玉米穗一样大，而每粒稻谷像花生米一样大。袁博士从梦中醒来，希望能种植一种能养活更多人的水稻。多年后的今天，袁博士还有另一个梦想，那就是他的稻谷可以出口并长遍全球。一个梦想总是不够的尤其对一个热爱和关心人民的人来说更是如此。

CHEMICAL OR ORGANIC FARMING? 化学耕作还是有机耕作

Over the past half century, using chemical fertilizers has become very common in farming. Many farmers welcomed them as a great way to stop crop disease and increase production. Recently, however, scientists have been finding that long-term use of these fertilizers can cause damage to the land and, even more dangerous, to people's health.

What are some of the problems caused by chemical fertilizers? First, they damage the land by killing the helpful bacteria and pests as well as the harmful ones. Chemicals also stay in the ground and underground water for a long time. This affects crops and, therefore, animals and

humans, since chemicals get inside the crops and cannot just be washed off. These chemicals in the food supply build up in people's bodies over time. Many of these chemicals can lead to cancer or other illnesses. In addition, fruit, vegetables and other food grown with chemical fertilizers usually grow too fast to be full of much nutrition. They may look beautiful, but inside there is usually more water than vitamins and minerals.

With these discoveries, some farmers and many customers are beginning to turn to organic farming. Organic farming is simply farming without using any chemicals. They focus on keeping their soil rich and free of disease. A healthy soil reduces disease and helps crops grow strong and healthy. Organic farmers, therefore, often prefer using natural waste from animals as fertilizer. They feel that this makes the soil in their fields richer in minerals and so more fertile. This also keeps the air, soil, water and crops free from chemicals.

Organic farmers also use many other methods to keep the soil fertile. They often change the kind of crop in each field every few years, for example, growing corn or wheat and then the next year peas or soybeans. Crops such as peas or soybeans put important minerals back into the soil, making it ready for crops such as wheat or corn that need rich and fertile soil. Organic farmers also plant crops to use different levels of soil, for example, planting peanuts that use the ground's surface followed by vegetables that put down deep roots. Some organic farmers prefer planting grass between crops to prevent wind or water from carrying away the soil, and then leaving it in the ground to become a natural fertilizer for the next year's crop. These many different organic farming methods have the same goal: to grow good food and avoid damaging the environment or people's health.

在过去的半个世纪里，在耕作中使用化肥已经非常普遍。很多农民喜欢使用化肥，把化肥作为防止农作物病虫害和提高产量的重要手段，然而，最近科学家发现长期使用这些肥料会造成土地受损，甚至更危险的是，会对人们的健康造成危害。

化肥带来的问题有哪些呢？首先，化肥在杀死病菌和害虫的同时也会杀死有益的细菌和昆虫，从而破坏土地。化学物质还会在地里和地下水中保存很长时间，而这会影响到农作物，进而影响到动物和人类，因为化学成分会进入到农作物中，并且不能被冲洗掉。随着时间的推移，食物中的这些化学成分会在人体中堆积。很多化学成分能导致癌症或其他疾病。另外，施过化肥的水果、蔬菜和其他食物通常生长的过快而营养不足。她们表面上很好看，但是里面通常含过多的水分，而不是维他命或矿物质。

由于这些发现，一些农民和许多消费者开始转向有机耕作。有机耕作就是不用任何化学制品的耕作。农民关心的是保持土壤肥沃并且免受病害。健康的土壤会减少病虫害并且帮助农作物茁壮成长。因此，有机耕作的农民通常喜欢把天然的动物粪便当作肥料。他们认为这会使地里的土壤更富含矿物质，因而也会更加肥沃，同时还可以让空气、土壤、水及农作物不受化学物质的污染。

有机耕作的农民也使用很多其他方法来保持土壤肥沃。在同一块地里，他们经常每隔几年就换种农作物。例如，种玉米和小麦后来年在改种豌豆或大豆。香豌豆和大豆这样的农作物将重要的矿物质带回土壤，从而使之适宜于种植要求土壤肥沃的农作物，比如玉米和小麦。有机耕作的农民还种植多种农作物来利用不同层次的土壤。比如，他们先种植生长于浅层土壤的花生，然后再种植生根于深层土壤的蔬菜。还有一些有机耕作者喜欢在农作物之间种草，以防

止水土流失，并且把草留在地理，从而成为来年农作物的天然肥料。这些不同的有机耕的方法有着同样地目标：种植好的粮食，避免损害环境或人们的健康。

必修 4 Unit 3 第三单元 幽默

A MASTER OF NONVERBAL HUMOUR 无声的幽默大师

As Victor Hugo once said, "Laughter is the sun that drives winter from the human face", and up to now nobody has been able to do this better than Charlie Chaplin. He brightened the lives of Americans and British through two world wars and the hard years in between. He made people laugh at a time when they felt depressed, so they could feel more content with their lives.

Not that Charlie's own life was easy! He was born in a poor family in 1889. His parents were both poor music hall performers. You may find it astonishing that Charlie was taught to sing as soon as he could speak and dance as soon as he could walk. Such training was common in acting families at this time, especially when the family income was often uncertain. Unfortunately his father died, leaving the family even worse off, so Charlie spent his childhood looking after his sick mother and his brother. By his teens, Charlie had, through his humour, become one of the most popular child actors in England. He could mime and act the fool doing ordinary everyday tasks. No one was ever bored watching him -his subtle acting made everything entertaining.

As time went by, he began making films. He grew more and more popular as his charming character, the little tramp, became known throughout the world. The tramp, a poor, homeless man with a moustache, wore large trousers, worn-out shoes and a small round black hat. He walked around stilly carrying a walking stick. This character was a social failure but was loved for his optimism and determination to overcome all difficulties. He was the underdog who was kind even when others were unkind to him.

How did the little tramp make a sad situation entertaining? Here is an example from one of his most famous films, The Gold Rush. It is the mid-nineteenth century and gold has just been discovered in California. Like so many others, the little tramp and his friend have rushed there in search of gold, but without success. Instead they are hiding in a small hut on the edge of a mountain during a snowstorm with nothing to eat. They are so hungry that they try boiling a pair of leather shoes for their dinner. Charlie first picks out the laces and eats them as if they were spaghetti. Then he cuts off the leather top of the shoe as if it were the finest steak. Finally he tries cutting and chewing the bottom of the shoe. He eats each mouthful with great enjoyment. The acting is so convincing that it makes you believe that it is one of the best meals he has ever tasted!

Charlie Chaplin wrote, directed and produced the films he starred in. In 1972 he was given a special Oscar for his outstanding work in films. He lived in England and the USA but spent his last years in Switzerland, where he was buried in 1977. He is loved and remembered as a great actor who could inspire people with great confidence.

维克多·雨果曾经说过：“笑容就如取走人们脸上的冬天的阳光。”关于这一点，直到今天也没有人能比查理·卓别林做得更好。在两次世界大战以及之间的艰苦岁月里，他给英国和美国人民打来了快乐。在人们感到沮丧的时候，卓别林使他们开怀大笑，于是人们对自己的生活

感到比较满意。

然而卓别林自己的生活并不容易。他生于 1899 年，出身贫寒。他的父母都是杂耍戏院里贫穷的演员。你可能会感到惊讶，查理刚能说话时大人就教他如何唱歌，他刚能走时大人就教他跳舞。这样的训练在当时的演员家庭中是很普遍的，尤其是在家庭收入经常不稳定的时候。不幸的是他的父亲去世了，整个家庭状况更糟了。所以卓别林在童年时候就要照顾生病的母亲和弟弟。在十多岁的时候，凭借着自己的幽默，查理在英国已经成为最受欢迎的童星之一。他能够不说话而仅靠动作来模仿傻子做日常的任务。看他的表演没有人会感到无聊——他巧妙的表演使得一切都那么滑稽可笑。

随着时间的推移，他开始拍电影。他塑造的可爱的“小流浪汉”角色开始闻名于世，而他自己也越来越受欢迎。这个穷苦的无家可归的小流浪汉，留着小胡子，穿着大裤子，破鞋子，头顶着黑色的小圆帽。他手里拿着一根手杖迈着僵硬的步伐四处游荡。这个角色是社会生活中的失败者，但他的乐观精神和战胜困难的决心都使他受到人们的喜爱。面对不善待它他的人，这个弱者依然保持着友善的态度。

然而这个小流浪汉是如何把悲凉的遭遇变得滑稽可笑的呢？这里有一个例子，来自于他最著名的电影之一《淘金记》。十九世纪末，在阿拉斯加发现了金子。像其他很多人一样，小流浪汉也涌到那里去淘金，但却没有成功。相反，他和另一个人被暴风雪困在一个小木屋里，没有任何东西吃。他们饿极了，小流浪汉只好煮了他的一只皮鞋来充饥。查理切掉皮鞋上面的部分，和同伴分享这只鞋。他把皮鞋鞋底切开嚼着吃，就想吃一块最好的牛排。然后挑出鞋带来吃，就想吃意大利面条一样。他每一口都嚼得津津有味。卓别林的表演是那么的有说服力，以至于你会相信这顿饭是他吃过的最美味的一餐。

查理·卓别林自编、自导、自制他主演的电影，1972 年他被授予奥斯卡特别奖，以表彰他在电影界的杰出工作。他生活在英国和美国，却在瑞士度过了生命中最后的日子，并于 1977 年安葬在那里。人们热爱和怀念这位伟大的演员，因为他鼓舞了人们，增强了人们的信心。

ENGLISH JOKES

1 There are thousands of jokes which use "play on words" to amuse us. One person asks a question which expects a particular reply. Instead, what he gets is another kind of answer which makes the situation funny. Now read some of these customer and waiter jokes. Can you match the joke with the explanation?

1 C: What's that fly doing in my soup?

W: Swimming, I think!

2 C: What's that?

W: It's bean soup.

C: I don't want to know what it's been. I want to know what it is now.

3 C: Waiter, will the pancakes be long?

W: No, sir. Round.

2 Some jokes are longer and tell a short, funny story. The following is one of those jokes about the famous detective Sherlock Holmes and his friend Doctor Watson. Read it and decide which of these two kinds of jokes you like better. Give your reasons.

Sherlock Holmes and Doctor Watson went camping in a mountainous area. They were lying in the open air under the stars. Sherlock Holmes looked up at the stars and whispered, "Watson, when you look at that beautiful sky, what do you think of?" Watson replied, "I think of how short life is and how long the universe has lasted." "No, no, Watson!" Holmes said. "What do you really think of?" Watson tried again. "I think of how small I am and how vast the sky is." "Try again, Watson!" said Holmes. Watson tried a third time. "I think of how cold the universe is and how warm people can be in their beds." Holmes said, "Watson, you fool! You should be thinking that someone has stolen our tent!"

必修 4 Unit 4 第四单元 有关身体语言

COMMUNICATION: NO PROBLEM? 交际：没有问题了吗？

Yesterday, another student and I, representing our university's student association, went to the Capital International Airport to meet this year's international students. They were coming to study at Beijing University. We would take them first to their dormitories and then to the student canteen. After half an hour of waiting for their flight to arrive, I saw several young people enter the waiting area looking around curiously. I stood for a minute watching them and then went to greet them.

The first person to arrive was Tony Garcia from Colombia, closely followed by Julia Smith from Britain. After I met them and then introduced them to each other, I was very surprised. Tony approached Julia, touched her shoulder and kissed her on the cheek! She stepped back appearing surprised and put up her hands, as if in defence. I guessed that there was probably a major misunderstanding. Then Akira Nagata from Japan came in smiling, together with George Cook from Canada. As they were introduced, George reached his hand out to the Japanese student. Just at that moment, however, Akira bowed so his nose touched George's moving hand. They both apologized - another cultural mistake!

Ahmed Aziz, another international student, was from Jordan. When we met yesterday, he moved very close to me as I introduced myself. I moved back a bit, but he came closer to ask a question and then shook my hand. When Darlene Coulon from France came dashing through the door, she recognized Tony Garcia's smiling face. They shook hands and then kissed each other twice on each cheek, since that is the French custom when adults meet people they know. Ahmed Aziz, on the contrary, simply nodded at the girls. Men from Middle Eastern and other Muslim countries will often stand quite close to other men to talk but will usually not touch women.

As I get to know more international friends, I learn more about this cultural "body language". Not all cultures greet each other the same way, nor are they comfortable in the same way with

touching or distance between people. In the same way that people communicate with spoken language, they also express their feelings using unspoken "language" through physical distance, actions or posture. English people, for example, do not usually stand very close to others or touch strangers as soon as they meet. However, people from places like Spain, Italy or South American countries approach others closely and are more likely to touch them. Most people around the world now greet each other by shaking hands, but some cultures use other greetings as well, such as the Japanese, who prefer to bow.

These actions are not good or bad, but are simply ways in which cultures have developed. I have seen, however, that cultural customs for body language are very general - not all members of a culture behave in the same way. In general, though, studying international customs can certainly help avoid difficulties in today's world of cultural crossroads!

昨天，我和另一个同学代表我们大学的学生会去首都国际机场迎接今年的留学生。他们要来北京大学学习。我们首先会把他们带到宿舍，然后去学生食堂。在等了半个小时之后，他们的航班到了，我看见几个年轻人走进了等候区，好奇地向四周张望。站着观察了他们有一分钟后，我便走过去打招呼。

第一个到达的是从哥伦比亚飞来的托尼·加西亚，随后紧跟着的是英国的朱莉娅·史密斯。在与他们碰面并介绍他们彼此认识之后，我（对看到的情景）感到很吃惊。托尼走近朱莉娅，摸了摸她的肩，并亲了她的脸！她后退几步，看上去有些吃惊，并举起了手，好像是在自卫。我猜想这里可能有个大误会。随后，来自日本的永田明微笑着走了进来，同时进来的还有加拿大的乔治·库克。当我为他们作介绍时，乔治把手伸向了这位日本学生。然而此时永田正在鞠躬，他的鼻子碰到了乔治伸过来的手。两人都互相道歉——这又是一个文化差异！

另一位国际学生艾哈迈德·阿齐兹是约旦人。昨天当我们见面我向他们作自我介绍时，他靠我很近。我往后退了一点儿，他又向前问了我一个问题，然后同我握手。法国的琳达·库隆匆忙走进门的时候，她认出了托尼·加西亚微笑的面孔。两个人握了握手，并且在对方的面颊上吻了两下。通常，法国成年人见到熟人就是这么做的。而艾哈迈德·阿齐兹却只是朝女孩们点点头。来自中东或一些穆斯林国家的男士，在谈话时通常站得离其他男士很近，但一般不会与女士接触。

随着认识的国际朋友越来越多，我了解到更多不同文化背景下的“身势语”。各种文化背景下的人互敬问候的方式不尽相同，身体接触和互相间距的程度也不尽相同。在使用口头语言交流的同时，人们还使用不出声的语言——身体间的距离、动作和姿态等来表达情感。比如，英国人通常不会站在离别人太远的地方，也不会一见面就（用身体）接触陌生人。但是，来自像西班牙、意大利或南美等国家的人会站在离别人很近的地方，而且很可能（用身体）接触对方。现在世界上大多数人见面都会互相握手问候，但有些文化（背景下的人）会采取另外一些寒暄方式，比如，日本人更愿意鞠躬。

这些行为都无所谓好与坏，只不过是文化发展的不同方式而已。然而我发现身势语的文化习俗是多元的——同一个（民族）文化中也并非所有成员的行为都一样。但总的来说，在当今文化交融的世界，学习不同国家的习俗能帮助我们避免交往中的困难。

SHOWING OUR FEELINGS 表达我们的情感

Body language is one of the most powerful means of communication, often even more powerful than spoken language. People around the world show all kinds of feelings, wishes and attitudes that they might never speak aloud. It is possible to "read" others around us, even if they do not intend for us to catch their unspoken communication. Of course, body language can be misread, but many gestures and actions are universal.

The most universal facial expression is, of course, the smile – its function is to show happiness and put people at ease. It does not always mean that we are truly happy, however. Smiles around the world can be false, hiding other feelings like anger, fear or worry. There are unhappy smiles, such as when someone "loses face" and smiles to hide it. However, the general purpose of smiling is to show good feelings.

From the time we are babies, we show unhappiness or anger by frowning. In most places around the world, frowning and turning one's back to someone shows anger. Making a fist and shaking it almost always means that someone is angry and threatening another person.

There are many ways around the world to show agreement, but nodding the head up and down is used for agreement, almost worldwide. Most people also understand that shaking the head from side to side means disagreement or refusal.

How about showing that I am bored? Looking away from people or yawning will, in most cases, make me appear to be uninterested. However, if I turn toward and look at someone or something, people from almost every culture will think that I am interested. If I roll my eyes and turn my head away, I most likely do not believe what I am hearing or do not like it.

Being respectful to people is subjective, based on each culture, but in general it is probably not a good idea to give a hug to a boss or teacher. In almost every culture, it is not usually good to stand too close to someone of a higher rank. Standing at a little distance with open hands will show that I am willing to listen.

With so many cultural differences between people, it is great to have some similarities in body language. We can often be wrong about each other, so it is an amazing thing that we understand each other as well as we do!

身势语是最强有力的交际手段之一，甚至经常比口头语言更有力量。世界各地的人们表达各种各样的情感、愿望和态度，他们可能从来不会大声地说出来。“读懂”我们周围的人的意识是有可能的，即便是人们并不想让我们捕捉到他们没有说出来的信息。当然，身势语可能会被误解，但是很多手势和动作是具有普遍性的。

最普遍使用的面部表情当然是微笑——其作用是表示快乐和安人心静。然而微笑并不总是意味着我们是真的快乐。世界上微笑可能是假的，用来掩盖其他情绪，比如生气、害怕和烦恼。还有不愉快的微笑，比如当某人“丢了面子”就会用微笑来掩饰。但是，微笑的一般目的是表达好的情绪。

从孩提时候起，我们就通过皱眉来表示不高兴或者愤怒。在世界上大多数地方，皱眉或者背对着某人都表示发怒。把手握紧，朝着别人晃拳头几乎总是意味着愤怒并且威胁别人。

世界上有很多方式来表示同意，但是几乎全世界都用上下点头来表示同意。大多数人都都知道左右摇头表示不同意或拒绝做某事。

如何来表示我很厌烦呢？在多数情况下，把眼光从人们身上移开或者打个哈欠，会使我看上去（对此人或此事）不感兴趣。但是如果我转身面对某人或者某事，几乎每一个文化背景的人都会认为我（对此人或此事）感兴趣。如果我转动着眼球，把头扭向一边，很可能是我不相信或者不喜欢所听到的话。

根据每一种文化，对人们表示尊重都是带有主观性的。但是一般来说，拥抱你的老板或老师很可能是不妥当的。在几乎每一种文化里，站在离级别跟高的人太近都不太好。站的有一定的距离，把手微微张开，会表示我愿意倾听。

人们之间的文化差异非常多，但好在身体语言有一些相似之处。尽管我们常常会彼此误解，但我们仍能做到彼此理解，这真是件令人惊奇的事。

必修 4 Unit 5 第五单元 主题公园

THEME PARKS — FUN AND MORE THAN FUN

主题公园——是娱乐，又不仅仅是娱乐

Which theme park would you like to visit? There are various kinds of theme parks, with a different park for almost everything: food, culture, science, cartoons, movies or history. Some parks are famous for having the biggest or longest roller coasters, others for showing the famous sights and sounds of a culture. Whichever and whatever you like, there is a theme park for you!

The theme park you are probably most familiar with is Disneyland. It can be found in several parts of the world. It will bring you into a magical world and make your dreams come true, whether traveling through space, visiting a pirate ship or meeting your favourite fairy tale or Disney cartoon character. As you wander around the fantasy amusement park, you may see Snow White or Mickey Mouse in a parade or on the street. Of course Disneyland also has many exciting rides, from giant swinging ships to terrifying free-fall drops. With all these attractions, no wonder tourism is increasing wherever there is a Disneyland. If you want to have fun and more than fun, come to Disneyland!

Dollywood, in the beautiful Smoky Mountains in the southeastern USA, is one of the most unique theme parks in the world. Dollywood shows and celebrates America's traditional southeastern culture. Although Dollywood has rides, the park's main attraction is its culture. Famous country music groups perform there all year in indoor and outdoor theatres. People come from all over America to see carpenters and other craftsmen make wood, glass and iron objects in the old-fashioned way. Visit the candy shop to try the same kind of candy that American southerners made 150 years ago, or take a ride on the only steam-engine train still working in the southeast USA. You can even see beautiful bald eagles in the world's largest bald

eagle preserve. And for those who like rides, Dollywood has one of the best old wooden roller coasters, Thunderhead. It is world-famous for having the most length in the smallest space. Come to Dollywood to have fun learning all about America's historical southeastern culture!

If you want to experience the ancient days and great deeds of English knights and ladies, princes and queens, then England's Camelot Park is the place for you. Every area of the park is modelled after life in the days of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table. In one place, you can watch magic shows with Merlin the Wizard. If you want to see fighting with swords or on horseback, then the jousting area is a good place to visit. If you do well there, King Arthur may choose you to fight in the big jousting tournament. Do you like animals? Then visit the farm area, and learn how people in ancient England ran their farms and took care of their animals. To enter a world of fantasy about ancient England, come to Camelot Park!

你喜欢参观哪一个主题公园呢？主题公园有不同的种类，不同的公园有不同的主题，几乎囊括了一切：食物、文化、科学、卡通、电影或历史。有一些主题公园因为有最大或者最长的过山车而闻名，有些则展示了文化中那些著名的声音或视觉景象。不论你喜欢哪一个，喜欢什么，总会有适合你的主题公园。

你最熟悉的主题公园很可能就是迪斯尼乐园吧。世界上好几个地方都有迪斯尼乐园。无论你是在太空遨游，参观海盗船，还是邂逅你最喜欢的童话故事或者迪斯尼卡通里的人物，迪士尼都会把你带到魔幻的世界，让你的梦想成真。当你在梦幻乐园漫步时，你可能会在游行队伍中或者街上看到白雪公主或米老鼠。当然，迪士尼还有很多颇具刺激性的游乐设施，比如巨大的吊船和可怕的自由落体设施。有这么多引人入胜的东西，难怪哪里有迪斯尼乐园，哪里的旅游业就会发达。如果你想尽情娱乐，而且有更多的收获，那就来迪斯尼乐园吧！

位于美国东南部美丽的斯莫基山脉中的多莱坞，是世界上最独特的主题公园之一。多莱坞展示并欢庆美国东南地区的传统文化。尽管这里也有搭乘游乐设施，但是公园最吸引的还是它的文化。著名的乡村音乐会团全年都会在露天或室内剧院演出。美国各地的人们来到这里，是为了观看木匠或其他工匠们用老式的方法制作木制品，玻璃制品和铁制品。还可以到糖果店品尝一下糖果，这些糖果和 150 年前美国南方人制作的一模一样。或者乘一乘蒸汽火车，这可是在美国东南部依然运转的唯一一辆蒸汽火车。你甚至可以再世界上最大的秃鹰保护区欣赏到美丽的秃鹰。多莱坞为那些喜欢搭乘游乐设施的人提供了最好的老式木制过山车之一——雷暴云贴。它因为在最小的空间内拥有最长的长度而闻名于世。请来多莱坞尽情了解美国东南地区的历史吧！

如果你想体验远古时代并且感受英国骑士、贵妇、王子和王后的高贵举止，那么英国的卡莫洛特公园就再合适不过了。园内所有的景区都是按照亚瑟王和圆桌骑士生活的时代复制的。有的地方你能和大魔术师梅林一起观看魔术表演。如果你想观看剑术或者马上格斗，格斗区是一个值得去的地方。如果你表现好的话，亚瑟王可能会挑选你参加大型的格斗联赛。你喜欢动物吗？那你来农场参观吧。在这里你可以了解到古英格兰的人们如何搭理他们的农场以及如何饲养动物。想进入古英格兰的梦幻世界吗？那就来卡莫洛特公园吧！

FUTUROSCOP — EXCITEMENT AND LEARNING

“观测未来”——刺激与求知

Last week I took a journey deep into space, to the end of the solar system, and was pulled into a black hole. Then I took a trip to Brazil and experienced surviving an airplane crash in the jungle. After that, I joined some divers and went to the bottom of the ocean to see strange blind creatures that have never seen sunlight. For a break, I took part in some car racing and then skied down some of the most difficult mountains in the world. I ended my travels by meeting face to face with a dinosaur, the terrible T-Rex, and survived the experience!

I did all this in one great day at Futuroscope. Opened in 1987, Futuroscope is one of the largest space-age parks in the world. This science and technology-based theme park in France uses the most advanced technology. Its 3-D cinemas and giant movie screens provide brand new experiences of the earth and beyond. Visitors can get close to parts of the world they have never experienced, going to the bottom of the ocean, flying through the jungle or visiting the edges of the solar system. The amazing, up-to-date information together with many opportunities for hands-on learning makes the world come to life in a completely new way for visitors. Learning centres throughout the park let visitors try their own scientific experiments, as well as learn more about space travel, the undersea world and much more.

I bought tickets for myself and my friends at the park's entrance, but tickets are also available online. Futuroscope is not only for individuals, but is also the perfect mix of fun and learning for class outings. Classes or other large groups that let Futuroscope know their plans in advance can get the group admission rate. For anyone coming from out of town, Futuroscope has many excellent hotels nearby, most of which provide a shuttle service to the park. If driving, Futuroscope is within easy reach of the freeway. Plan your trip well before starting, since Futuroscope has so many shows, activities and great souvenir shops that it is difficult to see them all. Come ready to walk a lot - be sure to wear some comfortable sneakers or other walking shoes!

上周我进行了一次深入太空的旅行。我来到了太阳系的尽头，被拖进了一个黑洞里。然后我浏览了巴西，感受了坠机后在丛林中求生的滋味。随后，我跟着一些潜水者潜入海底观察神秘的，从未见过阳光的生物。作为间歇，我参加了一个赛车比赛，然后来到世界上最险要的山上滑雪。最后我面对面地遭遇了一只恐龙——可怕的是雷克斯龙，在死里逃生之后，我的旅行也结束了。

在“观测未来”，我在一年之内就做完了所有这些事情。“预测未来”于 1987 年开放，是世界上最大的太空时代主题公园之一。这个以科技为基础的法国主题公园使用了最先进的技术。它的立体电影以及那巨大的屏幕能（为游客）提供在地球以及更远的地方进行全新体验机会。参观者可以接触到他们从来没有经历过的世界角落，比如潜入海底，飞跃丛林，或者参观太阳系的边缘地带。这些奇妙的、最新的信息，以及大量动手实践的学习机会让世界以一种全新的方式展现在游人面前。遍布公园的学习中心可以让参观者尝试做自己的科学实验，与此同时学到更多关于太空旅行、海底世界等等知识。

我是在公园的入口处给自己和朋友买的票，但是也可以网上购票。“观测未来”不仅仅适合“个人旅游”，也适合学生全班出游，因为它是娱乐和学习的完美结合。班级或着大的团体如果提前与“观测未来”预约，还可以享受团体入场价格。“观测未来”附近为那些城外来的游客准备了很多很好的旅馆，而且大多数旅馆都提供往返公园的车辆服务。如果开车（也很方便），“观测未来”就在高速公路附近。在出发之前好好计划一下你的旅行，因为“观测未来”里面的表演、活动和好的纪念品商店太多了，所以全部浏览完是很难的。来这里要准备走好多的路

——一定要穿上舒适的运动鞋或者其他适合步行的鞋。

必修 5 Unit 1 第一单元 伟大的科学家

JOHN SNOW DEFEATS "KING CHOLERA" 约翰·斯诺击败“霍乱王”

John Snow was a famous doctor in London - so expert, indeed, that he attended Queen Victoria as her personal physician. But he became inspired when he thought about helping ordinary people exposed to cholera. This was the deadly disease of its day. Neither its cause nor its cure was understood. So many thousands of terrified people died every time there was an outbreak. John Snow wanted to face the challenge and solve this problem. He knew that cholera would never be controlled until its cause was found.

He became interested in two theories that possibly explained how cholera killed people. The first suggested that cholera multiplied in the air. A cloud of dangerous gas floated around until it found its victims. The second suggested that people absorbed this disease into their bodies with their meals. From the stomach the disease quickly attacked the body and soon the affected person died.

John Snow suspected that the second theory was correct but he needed evidence. So when another outbreak hit London in 1854, he was ready to begin his enquiry. As the disease spread quickly through poor neighbourhoods, he began to gather information. In two particular streets, the cholera outbreak was so severe that more than 500 people died in ten days. He was determined to find out why.

First he marked on a map the exact places where all the dead people had lived. This gave him a valuable clue about the cause of the disease. Many of the deaths were near the water pump in Broad Street (especially numbers 16, 37, 38 and 40). He also noticed that some houses (such as 20 and 21 Broad Street and 8 and 9 Cambridge Street) had had no deaths. He had not foreseen this, so he made further investigations. He discovered that these people worked in the pub at 7 Cambridge Street. They had been given free beer and so had not drunk the water from the pump. It seemed that the water was to blame.

Next, John Snow looked into the source of the water for these two streets. He found that it came from the river polluted by the dirty water from London. He immediately told the astonished people in Broad Street to remove the handle from the pump so that it could not be used. Soon afterwards the disease slowed down. He had shown that cholera was spread by germs and not in a cloud of gas.

In another part of London, he found supporting evidence from two other deaths that were linked to the Broad Street outbreak. A woman, who had moved away from Broad Street, liked the water from the pump so much that she had it delivered to her house every day. Both she and her daughter died of cholera after drinking the water. With this extra evidence John Snow was able to announce with certainty that polluted water carried the virus.

To prevent this from happening again, John Snow suggested that the source of all the water supplies be examined. The water companies were instructed not to expose people to polluted water any more. Finally "King Cholera" was defeated.

约翰·斯洛是伦敦一位著名的医生——他的确医术精湛，因而成为照料维多利亚女王的私人医生。但他一想到要帮助那些得了霍乱的普通百姓时，他就感到很振奋。霍乱在当时是最致命的疾病，人们既不知道它的病源，也不了解它的治疗方法。每次霍乱暴发时，就有大批惊恐的老百姓死去。约翰·斯洛想面对这个挑战，解决这个问题。他知道，在找到病源之前，霍乱疫情是无法控制的。

斯洛对霍乱致人死地的两种推测都很感兴趣。一种看法是霍乱病毒在空气中繁殖着，像一股危险的气体到处漂浮，直到找到病毒的受害者为止。第二种看法是人们在吃饭的时候把这种病毒引入体内的。病从胃里发作而迅速殃及全身，患者就会很快地死去。

斯洛推测第二种说法是正确的，但他需要证据。因此，在 1854 年伦敦再次暴发霍乱的时候，约翰·斯洛着手准备对此进行调研。当霍乱在贫民区迅速蔓延的时候，约翰·斯洛就开始收集资料。他发现特别在两条街道上霍乱流行的很严重，在 10 天之内就死去了 500 多人。他决心要查明其原因。

首先，他在一张地图上标明了所有死者住过的地方。这提供了一条说明霍乱起因的很有价值的线索。许多死者是住在宽街的水泵附近（特别是这条街上 16、37、38、40 号）。他发现有些住宅（如宽街上 20 号和 21 号以及剑桥街上的 8 号和 9 号）却无人死亡。他以前没预料到这种情况，所以他决定深入调查。他发现，这些人都在剑桥街 7 号的酒馆里打工，而酒馆为他们免费提供啤酒喝，因此他们没有喝从宽街水泵抽上来的水。看来水是罪魁祸首。

接下来，约翰·斯洛调查了这两条街的水源情况。他发现，水是从河里来的，而河水被伦敦排出的脏水污染了。他马上叫宽街上惊慌失措的老百姓拆掉水泵的把手。这样，水泵就用不成了。不久，疫情就开始得到缓解。他证明了，他证明了霍乱是由病菌而不是由气团传播的。

在伦敦的另一个地区，他从两个与宽街暴发的霍乱有关联的死亡病例中发现了有力的证据。有一位妇女是从宽街搬过来的，她特别喜欢那里的水，每天都要派人从水泵打水运到家里来。她和她的女儿喝了这种水，都得了霍乱而死去。有了这个特别的证据，约翰·斯洛就能够肯定地宣布，这种被污染了的水携带着病菌。

为了防止这种情况的再度发生，约翰·斯洛建议所有水源都要经过检测。自来水公司也接到指令，不能再让人们接触被污染的水了。最终，“霍乱王”被击败了。

COPERNICUS ' REVOLUTIONARY THEORY 哥白尼的革命性理论

Nicolaus Copernicus was frightened and his mind was confused. Although he had tried to ignore them, all his mathematical calculations led to the same conclusion: that the earth was not the centre of the solar system. Only if you put the sun there did the movements of the other planets in the sky make sense. Yet he could not tell anyone about his theory as the powerful Christian Church would have punished him for even suggesting such an idea. They believed God had made the world and for that reason the earth was special and must be the centre of the solar system.

The problem arose because astronomers had noticed that some planets in the sky

seemed to stop, move backward and then go forward in a loop. Others appeared brighter at times and less bright at others. This was very strange if the earth was the centre of the solar system and all planets went round it.

Copernicus had thought long and hard about these problems and tried to find an answer. He had collected observations of the stars and used all his mathematical knowledge to explain them. But only his new theory could do that. So between 1510 and 1514 he worked on it, gradually improving his theory until he felt it was complete.

In 1514 he showed it privately to his friends. The changes he made to the old theory were revolutionary. He placed a fixed sun at the centre of the solar system with the planets going round it and only the moon still going round the earth. He also suggested that the earth was spinning as it went round the sun and this explained changes in the movement of the planets and in the brightness of the stars. His friends were enthusiastic and encouraged him to publish his ideas, but Copernicus was cautious. He did not want to be attacked by the Christian Church, so he only published it as he lay dying in 1543.

Certainly he was right to be careful. The Christian Church rejected his theory, saying it was against God's idea and people who supported it would be attacked. Yet Copernicus' theory is now the basis on which all our ideas of the universe are built. His theory replaced the Christian idea of gravity, which said things fell to earth because God created the earth as the centre of the universe. Copernicus showed this was obviously wrong. Now people can see that there is a direct link between his theory and the work of Isaac Newton, Albert Einstein and Stephen Hawking.

尼古拉·哥白尼被吓得心烦意乱的。虽然他曾经试着不去理睬那些数字，然而他所有的数学计算都得出了一个相同的结论：地球不是太阳系的中心。只有当你把太阳放在中心位置上，天空中其他行星的运动才能说得清楚。他的这个理论可不能告诉任何人，因为即使他只暗示有这种想法，他都会受到强大的基督教会势力的惩罚。教会认为世界是上帝创造的，正因为如此，地球就具有特殊的意义，它必定要成为太阳系的中心。

这样，问题就来了，因为天文学家以前发现过，天上有些行星停顿下来，往后移动，然后再成环状向前移动，而其他行星看上去有时亮些，有时又不怎么亮。如果地球是太阳系的中心，而所有行星环绕着地球转的话，那么这种现象就很奇怪了。

哥白尼对这些问题曾经苦苦思索过很久，试图找出问题的答案。他曾经收集过观察星球的数据，并且利用他的全部数学知识来解释这些数据。但是只有他的新理论才能作出解释。于是，他在 1510 至 1514 年期间从事这项研究，逐步修改他的理论，直到他感到完善时为止。

1514 年，他把他的新理论私下里给他的朋友们看。他对旧理论的修改是具有革命性的。他把太阳固定在太阳系的中心位置上，而行星则围绕着太阳转，只有月球仍然绕着地球转。他还提出地球在围绕太阳转的同时，它本身还自转，这样就说明了行星运动的变化情况以及星球亮度问题。他的朋友都热情地鼓励他把他的想法公之于世，而他却小心谨慎，他不想遭到基督教会的攻击，所以他直到 1543 年临终之前才公布了这一观点。

当然，他小心谨慎是对的。基督教会拒绝接受他的理论，说这种理论违背了上帝的旨意，而支持这种理论的人都会受到打击。然而哥白尼的理论却是我们宇宙观赖以建立的基础。他的理论还改变了基督教对地心引力的看法，他们认为物体往地球上掉落是因为上帝创造了地球，

而地球正是宇宙的中心。哥白尼表明这是明显错误的。如今人们可以看到，他的这些想法与艾萨克·牛顿、阿尔伯特·爱因斯坦以及斯蒂芬·霍金等人的研究都有着直接的联系。

必修 5 Unit 2 第二单元 英国 THE UNITED KINGDOM

POZZLES IN GEOGRAPHY 地理之谜

People may wonder why different words are used to describe these four countries: England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. You can clarify this question if you study British history.

First there was England. Wales was linked to it in the thirteenth century. Now when people refer to England you find Wales included as well. Next England and Wales were joined to Scotland in the seventeenth century and the name was changed to "Great Britain". Happily this was accomplished without conflict when King James of Scotland became King of England and Wales as well. Finally the English government tried in the early twentieth century to form the United Kingdom by getting Ireland connected in the same peaceful way. However, the southern part of Ireland was unwilling and broke away to form its own government. So only Northern Ireland joined with England, Wales and Scotland to become the United Kingdom and this was shown to the world in a new flag called the Union Jack.

To their credit the four countries do work together in some areas (eg, the currency and international relations), but they still have very different institutions. For example, Northern Ireland, England and Scotland have different educational and legal systems as well as different football teams for competitions like the World Cup!

England is the largest of the four countries, and for convenience it is divided roughly into three zones. The zone nearest France is called the South of England, the middle zone is called the Midlands and the one nearest to Scotland is known as the North. You find most of the population settled in the south, but most of the industrial cities in the Midlands and the North of England. Although, nationwide, these cities are not as large as those in China, they have world-famous football teams and some of them even have two! It is a pity that the industrial cities built in the nineteenth century do not attract visitors. For historical architecture you have to go to older but smaller towns built by the Romans. There you will find out more about British history and culture.

The greatest historical treasure of all is London with its museums, art collections, theatres, parks and buildings. It is the centre of national government and its administration. It has the oldest port built by the Romans in the first century AD, the oldest building begun by the Anglo-Saxons in the 1060s and the oldest castle constructed by later Norman rulers in 1066. There has been four sets of invaders of England. The first invaders, the Romans, left their towns and roads. The second, the Anglo-Saxons, left their language and their government. The third, the Vikings, influenced the vocabulary and place-names of the North of England, and the fourth, the Normans, left castles and introduced new words for food.

If you look around the British countryside you will find evidence of all these invaders. You

must keep your eyes open if you are going to make your trip to the United Kingdom enjoyable and worthwhile.

人们也许觉得奇怪，为什么用来描述英格兰、威尔士、苏格兰和北爱尔兰这四个国家的词语不太一样。但如果你学过英国历史，就能弄清楚这个问题。

首先是英格兰。威尔士于 13 世纪同英格兰联合了起来。如今只要有人提起英格兰，你就会发现威尔士总是包括在内的。接着，英格兰、威尔士同苏格兰于 17 世纪联合了起来，名字就改成了“大不列颠”。令人庆幸的是，当苏格兰的詹姆斯国王成为英格兰和威尔士的国王时，这三个国家和平地实现了联合。最后，英国政府打算于 20 世纪初把爱尔兰也同另外三个国家和平联合起来以形成联合王国。然而，爱尔兰的南部却不愿组建联合王国，它分离出去，并建立了自己的政府。因此只有北爱尔兰同英格兰、威尔士、苏格兰联合起来，而组成了联合王国，这一点从新的联合王国国旗上就可以看得出来。

值得赞扬的是，这四个国家的确在一些方面共同合作，例如在货币和国际关系方面；但是有些制度仍然区别很大。例如，北爱尔兰、英格兰和苏格兰在教育体制和立法体制上都存在着差异。在参加像世界杯之类的比赛时，它们有着各自的足球队。

在这四个国家中，英格兰是最大的。为了方便起见，它大致可以划分为三个地区。最靠近法国的那个地区叫做英格兰南部，中部地区叫做英格兰中部，最靠近苏格兰的那个地区叫做英格兰北部。你可以看到英国的大部分人口聚居在南部，而多数大工业城市都位于中部和北部。尽管，英国任何一个城市都不像中国的城市那样大，但是他们都有着自己的享有威名的足球队，有的城市甚至还有两个队。很遗憾，这些建于 19 世纪的工业城市对游客并没有吸引力。要找历史性建筑你得去更古老的、比较小些的由古罗马人建造的城镇。在那儿你才可能找到更多的有关英国历史和文化的东西。

最具历史意义的宝地是伦敦。那儿有博物馆，有艺术珍品、剧院、公园和各种建筑物。它是全国的政治中心。它有公元一世纪由罗马人建造的最古老的港口，有由盎格鲁——撒克逊人始建于 11 世纪 60 年代的最古老的建筑，还有公元 1066 年由后来的诺曼人统治者建造的最古老的城堡。曾经有四批侵略者到过英国。第一批入侵者是古罗马人，留下了他们的城镇和道路。接着是盎格鲁——撒克逊人，留下了他们的语言和政体。第三是斯堪的纳维亚人，他们对词汇和北部的地名造成了一定影响；第四是诺曼人，他们留下了城堡和食物名称的新词语。如果你到英国乡间去看看，你就会找到所有这些入侵者的痕迹。如果想使你的英国之旅不虚此行又有意义，你就必须留心观察。

SIGHTSEEING IN LONDON 伦敦观光记

Worried about the time available, Zhang Pingyu had made a list of the sites she wanted to see in London. Her first delight was going to the Tower. It was built long ago by the Norman invaders of AD 1066. Fancy! This solid stone, square tower had remained standing for one thousand years. Although the buildings had expanded around it, it remained part of a royal palace and prison combined. To her great surprise, Zhang Pingyu found the Queen's jewels guarded by special royal soldiers who, on special occasions, still wore the four-hundred-year-old uniform of the time of Queen Elizabeth I.

There followed St Paul's Cathedral built after the terrible fire of London in 1666. It looked splendid when first built! Westminster Abbey, too, was very interesting. It contained statues in memory of dead poets and writers, such as Shakespeare. Then just as she came out of the abbey, Pingyu heard the famous sound of the clock, Big Ben, ringing out the hour. She finished the day by looking at the outside of Buckingham Palace, the Queen's house in London. Oh, she had so much to tell her friends!

The second day the girl visited Greenwich and saw its old ships and famous clock that sets the world time. What interested her most was the longitude line. It is an imaginary line dividing the eastern and western halves of the world and is very useful for navigation. It passes through Greenwich, so Pingyu had a photo taken standing on either side of the line.

The last day she visited Karl Marx's statue in Highgate Cemetery. It seemed strange that the man who had developed communism should have lived and died in London. Not only that, but he had worked in the famous reading room of the Library of the British Museum. Sadly the library had moved from its original place into another building and the old reading room was gone. But she was thrilled by so many wonderful treasures from different cultures displayed in the museum. When she saw many visitors enjoying looking at the beautiful old Chinese pots and other objects on show, she felt very proud of her country.

The next day Pingyu was leaving London for Windsor Castle. "Perhaps I will see the Queen?" she wondered as she fell asleep.

由于担心时间不够，张萍玉早就把她想要在伦敦参观的地点列了一张单子。她最先想参观的地方是伦敦塔，它是很久以前由入侵的诺曼人在公元 1066 年修建的。真是太棒了！这个坚实的用石头砌的方形塔已经在那屹立一千年了。尽管在塔的四周扩建了一些建筑，但它仍然是皇宫和监狱联合体的一个组成部分。让张萍玉很惊讶的是，她发现女王的珠宝由皇家特别卫士守护着，而这些卫士在一些特殊的日子仍然穿着 400 年前伊丽莎白一世女王时代的制服。

接着参观的是圣保罗大教堂，它是公元 1666 年伦敦大火以后建造的，刚建成的时候，它看起来真是金碧辉煌。威斯敏斯特大教堂也是很有意思的地方，里面珍藏着一些已故诗人和作家的雕像，例如莎士比亚的雕像。正当萍玉走出大教堂的时候，她听到了著名的大本钟整点敲响的钟声。她参观了女王伦敦住所白金汉宫的外景，以此结束了一天的观光。啊，她要同朋友们讲的实在太多了！

第二天，萍玉姑娘参观了格林尼治天文台，看到了古老的轮船和那座著名的为时间定时的时钟。她最感兴趣的是那条通过天文台的经线。这是一条假想的线，它把世界分成东西两半球，从而有利于航海。这条线穿过格林尼治，萍玉就跨着这条线拍了一张照片。

最后一天，她参观了伦敦海洛特公墓里的卡尔·马克思的雕像。这似乎是一件怪事：这位发展了共产主义的人竟然在伦敦生活过，并且在伦敦去世。不仅如此，他还在大英博物馆著名的图书阅览室工作过。遗憾的是，这个图书馆已经从原来的地方搬到另一座大楼里去了，而原来的阅览室也没有了。但是她感到最为震惊的却是博物馆里展出的那么多来自不同文化的奇妙宝物。当萍玉看到那么多参观者用欣赏的目光注视着古老漂亮的中国陶瓷和其他展品时，心里充满了对祖国的自豪感。

再过一天，萍玉就要离开伦敦去温莎城堡了。她边睡觉边想：“也许我能见到女王呢？”

FIRST IMPRESSIONS 第一印象

Spacemall: liqiang299A@GreatAdventureSpaceStation.com 15/11/3008 (Earthtime)

Dear Mum and Dad, I still cannot believe that I am taking up this prize that I won last year. I have to remind myself constantly that I am really in AD 3008. Worried about the journey, I was unsettled for the first few days. As a result, I suffered from "Time lag". This is similar to the "jet lag" you get from flying, but it seems you keep getting flashbacks from your previous time period. So I was very nervous and uncertain at first. However, my friend and guide, Wang Ping, was very understanding and gave me some green tablets which helped a lot. Well-known for their expertise, his parents' company, called "Future Tours", transported me safely into the future in a time capsule.

I can still remember the moment when the space stewardess called us all to the capsule and we climbed in through a small opening. The seats were comfortable and after a calming drink, we felt sleepy and closed our eyes. The capsule began swinging gently sideways as we lay relaxed and dreaming. A few minutes later, the journey was completed and we had arrived. I was still on the earth but one thousand years in the future. What would I find?

At first my new surroundings were difficult to tolerate. The air seemed thin, as though its combination of gases had little oxygen left. Hit by a lack of fresh air, my head ached. Just as I tried to make the necessary adjustment to this new situation, Wang Ping appeared. "Put on this mask," he advised. "It'll make you feel much better." He handed it to me and immediately hurried me through to a small room nearby for a rest. I felt better in no time. Soon I was back on my feet again and following him to collect a hovering carriage driven by computer. These carriages float above the ground and by bending or pressing down in your seat, you can move swiftly. Wang Ping fastened my safety belt and showed me how to use it. Soon I could fly as fast as him. However, I lost sight of Wang Ping when we reached what looked like a large market because of too many carriages flying by in all directions. He was swept up into the centre of them. Just at that moment I had a "time lag" flashback and saw the area again as it had been in the year AD 2008. I realized that I had been transported into the future of what was still my hometown! Then I caught sight of Wang Ping again and flew after him.

Arriving at a strange-looking house, he showed me into a large, bright clean room. It had a green wall, a brown floor and soft lighting. Suddenly the wall moved - it was made of trees! I found later that their leaves provided the room with much-needed oxygen. Then Wang Ping flashed a switch on a computer screen, and a table and some chairs rose from under the floor as if by magic. "Why not sit down and eat a little?" he said. "You may find this difficult as it is your first time travel trip. Just relax, since there is nothing planned on the timetable today. Tomorrow you'll be ready for some visits." Having said this, he spread some food on the table, and produced a bed from the floor. After he left, I had a brief meal and a hot bath. Exhausted, I slid into bed and fell fast asleep.

More news later from your loving son,

Li Qiang

太空邮件: liqiang 299A@greatAdventureSpaceStation.com

15/11/3008(地球时间)

亲爱的爸爸妈妈:

我现在仍然无法相信我是在接受去年获得的这个奖励。我得不断提醒自己，我真的已经进入到了公元 3008 年了。因为担心这次旅行，头几天我心里总是不踏实，结果我得了时间滞后症。这就与你乘坐飞机会产生时差反应相似，所不同的是，在你的脑子里似乎会不断闪现以前的时光。因此，我一开始就感到神经过敏和心神不定。但是我的朋友兼导游王平很细心体贴，给了我几粒绿色药片，倒是挺起作用的。他父母的公司叫做“未来之旅”，以其技术高超而闻名。他们把我装在一个时间舱里，平安地把我送入了未来。

我仍旧记得我们被太空服务员一起叫到时间舱，爬上去进入一个小门。座位是很舒适的，喝了点镇静剂后，我们的眼睛就闭上了，感到昏昏欲睡似的。时间舱在轻轻左右摇晃，我们放松地躺在那里做梦。几分钟以后，旅程结束，我们就到了。我仍然在地球上，但是进入到了未来的一千年。我们会看到什么呢？

一开始新的环境让我很难忍受。空气似乎很稀薄，好像在混合的气体中剩下的氧气很少。由于缺乏新鲜空气，我感到头痛。正当我想努力调整适应新环境时，王平出现了。他告诉我，“把这个面罩戴上。它会使你感觉好得多。”他把面罩递给我，敦促我马上走进附近的一个小房间，叫我休息。我立刻就感到舒服些了。没过多久，我就再次站立起来，跟着他去领取了一台由电脑驱动的气垫车。这些气垫车是在地面上方漂浮着的，只要在座位上把操纵杆打弯或压下，你就可以迅速地移动。王平系紧了我的安全带，教我怎样使用它。不久，我就可以飞得跟王平一样快了。可是，当我们到达一个看上去像大市场的地方时，由于太多车子朝四面八方飞奔，我看不见王平了。他被卷入到这群车队里去了。就在这个时候我得到一次“时间滞后”的闪回，这样我就再次看到了似乎是公元 2008 年的那个地区。我这才懂得我被送到了未来，但却仍然在自己的家乡。就在这个时候，我又见到了王平，于是又跟在他后面飞去。

到了一幢看上去很奇怪的风子里，他把我带到一个明亮而洁净的大房间。墙是绿色的，地板是棕色的，灯光很柔和。突然墙壁移动了——原来是树形成的！后来我才发现，就是这些树的叶子为这栋房屋提供了最急需的氧气。然后王平在电脑屏幕上的开关上闪了一下，于是一张桌子和几把椅子就像变魔术那样从地板下面升了起来。“怎么不坐下来吃些东西呢？”他说道，“你第一次作这样的时间旅行，可能会感到有些困难。你可以好好休息一下。今天没有任何出行计划。明天你还要准备参观几个地方。”说完这些，他把食物摆在桌子上，又从地板下取出一张床来。他离开后，我简单吃了饭，洗了个热水澡。实在累坏了，我溜上床很快就睡着了。

以后再谈吧！

你的儿子

李强

I HAVE SEEN AMAZING THINGS 我看到了奇妙的东西

My first visit was to a space station considered the most modern in space. Described as an enormous round plate, it spins slowly in space to imitate the pull of the earth's gravity. Inside was an exhibition of the most up-to-date inventions of the 31 st century. A guide (G) showed us around along a moveable path.

G: Good morning to all our visitors from 2008. First we're going to examine one of the latest forms of communication among our space citizens. No more typists working on a typewriter or computer!

No more postage or postcodes! Messages can now be sent using a "thoughtpad". You place the metal band over your head, clear your mind, press the sending button, think your message and the next instant it's sent. It's stored on the "thoughtpad" of the receiver. It's quick, efficient and environmentally friendly. The only limitation is if the user does not think his or her message clearly, an unclear message may be sent. But we cannot blame the tools for the faults of the user, can we?

During the explanation I looked at the pair of small objects called "thoughtpads" on a table. They just looked like metal ribbons. So ordinary but so powerful! While I was observing them, the path moved us on.

G: And now ladies and gentlemen, we are in the "environment area". People used to collect waste in dustbins. Then the rubbish was sent to be buried or burned, am I right? (We nodded.) Well, now there's a system where the waste is disposed of using the principles of ecology. A giant machine, always greedy for more, swallows all the waste available. The rubbish is turned into several grades of useful material, such as "fertilizer" for the fields and "soil" for deserts. Nothing is wasted, and everything, even plastic bags, is recycled. A great idea, isn't it?

I stared at the moving model of the waste machine, absorbed by its efficiency. But again we moved on.

G: Our third stop shows the changes that have happened to work practices. Manufacturing no longer takes place on the earth but on space stations like this one. A group of engineers programme robots to perform tasks in space. The robots produce goods such as drugs, clothes, furniture, hovering carriages, etc. There is no waste, no pollution and no environmental damage! However, the companies have to train their representatives to live and work in space settlements. They have to monitor the robots and the production. When the goods are ready they're transported by industrial spaceship back to earth.

My mind began to wander. What job would I do? My motivation increased as I thought of the wonderful world of the future.

我首先参观的是一个太空站，这个站被认为是太空中最现代化的地方。太空站像一个巨大的圆盘，在太空中缓缓的旋转，以仿照出地球重心的引力。太空站里展出了 31 世纪一些最前沿的发明。有个导游带领我们站在一条移动的运送带上，到各处参观。

导游：从 2008 年来访的朋友们，早上好！首先，我们要查看一种我们太空居民使用的最新的通讯方式。再也不需要打字员在打字机或电脑上工作了！再也不需要邮费和邮政编码了！现在用一种“思想仪”就可以传递信息。你把金属带放在头上，整理思路，按下发送键，集中精神想着你要发送的信息，片刻功夫信息就发送出去了。这个信息会储存在接受者的“思想仪”里。它快捷有效，而且环保。唯一的缺点是，如果使用者不能想清楚要传递的信息，发送出去的信息可能是模糊不清的。但我们不能因为使用者的使用不当而责备仪器，是不是？

在导游解说的时候，我观看着桌上这副被称为“思想仪”的小东西。它们看上去像金属带子。那么普通，但却那么神通广大！正当我还在观察时，运送带向前移动了。

导游：女士们先生们，现在我们到了“环保地带”。以前人们习惯用垃圾箱收集废弃物，然后这些垃圾被送走埋掉或烧掉，我说的对吧？（我们都点头。）可现在我们有一种装置，能利用生态学原理来处理掉废弃物。一架巨大的机器，能把所有能获得的废弃物都吞进去，而且总

是贪得无厌。然后垃圾被分解成了几种有用的物质，如庄稼地的“肥料”和沙漠中的“土壤”。什么都不浪费，所有的东西，哪怕是塑料袋也被回收利用了。伟大的创意，对不对？

我注视着缓缓移动的垃圾分解机器模型，为它的成效所吸引。但是，我们又开始向前移动了。

导游：第三站要展示给我们的是工作实践方面的一些变化。批量生产不再在地球上进行，而是转移到了像这样的太空站里。在太空中，一组工程师给机器人设计了程序让它们完成工作。机器人生产像药品、衣服、家具和气垫车等东西。没有废弃物、没有污染，也没有环境破坏。但是，这些公司必须培训他们的代表能在太空中生活和工作。他们必须在此监控机器人和生产过程。一旦货物齐备，就用工用太空船运送到地球。

我的思绪开始漫游。我能从事什么工作呢？当我想到这个奇妙的未来世界时，我兴趣倍增、干劲十足。

必修 5 Unit 4 Making the news-Reading 第四单元 撰写新闻

MY FIRST WORK ASSIGNMENT" UNFORGETTABLE" ,SAYS NEW JOURNALIST

我的第一项工作任务 “难以忘怀，”新闻记者说

Never will Zhou Yang (ZY) forget his first assignment at the office of a popular English newspaper. His discussion with his new boss, Hu Xin (HX), was to strongly influence his life as a journalist.

HX: Welcome. We're delighted you're coming to work with us. Your first job here will be an assistant journalist. Do you have any questions?

ZY: Can I go out on a story immediately?

HX: (laughing) That' s admirable, but I' m afraid it would be unusual ! Wait till you' re more experienced. First we'll put you as an assistant to an experienced journalist. Later you can cover a story and submit the article yourself.

ZY: Wonderful. What do I need to take with me? I already have a notebook and camera.

HX: No need for a camera. You'll have a professional photographer with you to take photographs. You'll find your colleagues very eager to assist you, so you may be able to concentrate on photography later if you' re interested.

ZY: Thank you. Not only am I interested in photography, but I took an amateur course at university to update my skills.

HX: Good.

ZY: What do I need to remember when I go out to cover a story?

HX: You need to be curious. Only if you ask many different questions will you acquire all the information you need to know. We say a good journalist must have a good "nose" for a story. That means you must be able to assess when people are not telling the whole truth and then try to discover it. They must use research to inform themselves of the missing parts of the story.

ZY: What should I keep in mind?

HX: Here comes my list of dos and don'ts: don't miss your deadline, don't be rude, don't talk too much, but make sure you listen to the interviewee carefully.

ZY: Why is listening so important?

HX: Well, you have to listen for detailed facts. Meanwhile you have to prepare the next question depending on what the person says.

ZY: But how can I listen carefully while taking notes?

HX: This is a trick of the trade, If the interviewee agrees, you can use a recorder to get the facts straight. It's also useful if a person wants to challenge you. You have the evidence to support your story.

ZY: I see! Have you ever had a case where someone accused your journalists of getting the wrong end of the stick?

HX: Yes, but it was a long time ago. This is how the story goes. A footballer was accused of taking money for deliberately not scoring goals so as to let the other team win. We went to interview him. He denied taking money but we were sceptical. So we arranged an interview between the footballer and the man supposed to bribe him. When we saw them together we guessed from the footballer's body language that he was not telling the truth. So we wrote an article suggesting he was guilty. It was a dilemma because the footballer could have demanded damages if we were wrong. He tried to stop us publishing it but later we were proved right.

ZY: Wow! That was a real "scoop". I'm looking forward to my first assignment now. Perhaps I'll get a scoop too!

HX: Perhaps you will. You never know.

周阳永远不会忘记他在一家畅销英文报纸的第一项工作任务。他同新上司胡欣的讨论对他的记者生涯必将产生强烈的影响。

胡：欢迎你，非常高兴你来参加我们的工作，你来到这里首先就是当助理记者。有什么问题吗？

周：我可以马上去采访吗？

胡：（笑）真是勇气可嘉！不过恐怕这不太合乎常规，还是等到你比较有经验以后吧。我们先要派你给有经验的记者作助理。以后，你才能独自去进行新闻采访并提交自己的新闻稿。

周：太好了！我需要随身带些什么？我已经带了笔记本和照相机。

胡：不需要照相机！你们将带上一名专业摄影师去拍照。你将发现你的同事们会热情地帮助你。如果你对摄影感兴趣，以后你可以集中精力去钻研。

周：谢谢你。对摄影我不仅只是感兴趣，在大学里我还专修过业余摄影课来更新我的技术。

胡：那很好啊。

周：我出去采访时还需要记住些什么事呢？

胡：你需要有好奇心。你只有提出了许多不同的问题之后才有可能获得你需要知道的信息。我们说，一个好的记者必须有一个对新闻非常敏感的“嗅觉”。那就是说，在人们没有说出全部真相时，你必须能够判断出，并努力发现真理。记者必须通过调查研究，来使自己了解到被遗漏的那部分情况。

周：我应该注意些什么呢？

胡：下面是我的行为准则：不要延误任务规定的期限，不可对人粗鲁，不可自己说得太多，务必认真倾听被采访人回答问题。

周：为什么听人家讲话这样重要呢？

胡：你得听清楚事实的细节。同时，你还要根据被采访人所说的话准备提出下一个问题。

周：在我记笔记的同时，怎么能仔细倾听对方的答话呢？

胡：这就是我们职业的诀窍了。如果被采访人允许，你可以使用录音机，录下全部事实。如果有人提出质疑，这也有用，你就有证据来支持自己的报道了。

周：我明白了！你有没有过这样的情况：别人控告你的记者，说他的报道失实？

胡：有的。不过这是很久以前的事了。事情是这样的：一位足球运动员被指挥受贿，故意不进球，好让对方球队赢球。我们去采访了他。他否认收了钱，但我们对此表示怀疑。于是，我们安排这名球员和被认为行贿的人一起接受采访，而当我们看到他们在一起时，我们就从足球运动员的体态语上猜到他没有说真话。我们写了一篇文章，暗示足球队员有罪。这事有些为难，因为如果我们错了，他就可以向我们索要赔偿。他竭力阻止我们发表这篇文章，但后来证实我们是正确的。

周：哇！那才是真正的独家新闻哩！我期盼着即将到来的首次任务。说不定我也会搞到独家新闻呢！

胡：也许你会的，谁知道呢。

GETTING THE "SCOOP" 抢发独家新闻

"Quick," said the editor. "Get that story ready. We need it in this edition to be ahead of the other newspapers. This is a scoop." Zhou Yang had just come back into the office after an interview with a famous film star. "Did he really do that?" asked someone from the International News Department. "Yes, I'm afraid he did," Zhou Yang answered. He set to work.

His first task was to write his story, but he had to do it carefully. Although he realized the man had been lying, Zhou Yang knew he must not accuse him directly. He would have to be accurate. Concise too! He knew how to do that. Months of training had taught him to write with no wasted words or phrases. He sat down at his computer and began to work.

The first person who saw his article was a senior editor from his department. He checked the evidence, read the article and passed it on to the copy-editor. She began to edit the piece and design the main headline and smaller heading. "This will look very good on the page," she said. "Where is a good picture of this man?" Then as the article was going to be written in English Zhou Yang also took a copy to the native speaker employed by the newspaper to polish the style. She was also very happy with Zhou Yang's story. "You are really able to write a good front page article," she said. Zhou Yang smiled with happiness. Last of all, the chief editor read it and approved it. "Well done," he said to Zhou Yang. "But please show me your evidence so we're sure we've got our facts straight." "I'll bring it to you immediately," said Zhou Yang excitedly.

The news desk editor took the story and began to work on all the stories and photos until all the pages were set. All the information was then ready to be processed into film negatives. This was the first stage of the printing process. They needed four negatives, as several colours were

going to be used on the story. Each of the main colours had one negative sheet and when they were combined they made a coloured page for the newspaper. After one last check the page was ready to be printed. Zhou Yang waited excitedly for the first copies to be ready. "Wait 611 tonight," his friend whispered. "I expect there will be something about this on the television news. A real scoop!"

周阳刚刚采访了一位著名影星回到办公室，编辑就说：“快点把那篇报道准备好，我们这一版就要用，这样我们就抢在其他报纸的前面了，这就是抢先的独家新闻。”国际新闻编辑部有人提出问题：“他真的干了那种事吗？”周阳回答说：“是的，恐怕是这样的。”接着他便着手准备报道了。

他的第一件事就是写报道稿，他必须认认真真地写。尽管他认为那个人一直在说谎话，但周阳懂得，他决不能直接指责那个人。他必须做到准确无误，还要简明扼要。他知道该如何做。经过几个月的培训，他已经学会了写文章，全然没有废话。他在电脑前坐下就开始工作了。

第一个看到这篇文章的人的他们部里的一位编审。他核查了文中的证据，阅读了整篇报道，然后递给技术编辑。她就开始了编辑工作，设计了主标题和副标题。她说：“在版面上这会很好看。这个人的照片该放在哪儿好呢？”因为这篇文章要用英文来写，所有周阳拿了一份稿子给一位母语为英语的外国雇员，请她对语言风格进行润饰。这位雇员对周阳的报道也很满意。她评价说：“你确实能写很好的头版新闻了。”周阳高兴地笑了。最后主编审读了这篇稿子，并且批准发表了。他对周阳说：“文章写得很好，不过你还得拿出证据来表明事实确凿。”周阳激动地说：“我马上拿来。”

新闻文字编辑取走这篇报道，开始对所有的报道和图片进行编排，直至把各版面全部编定。此后，所有的报道材料就要被制成胶片。这是印制过程的第一道工序。由于这篇报道要用好几种颜色，因此需要四张胶片。每一种主色要用一张底片，四张底片结合起来就制成一张报纸的彩页。经过最后一次校对后，这个版面就可以准备印制了。周阳兴奋地等待着第一批报纸的印出。“要等到今天晚上。”他的朋友轻声地告诉他说。“我期望电视新闻会对这件事作一点报道。真是独家新闻了！”

必修 5 Unit 5 First aid-Reading 第五单元 急救

FIRST AID FOR BURNS —— 烧伤的急救

The skin is an essential part of your body and its largest organ. You have three layers of skin which act as a barrier against disease, poisons and the sun's harmful rays. The functions of your skin are also very complex: it keeps you warm or cool; it prevents your body from losing too much water; it is where you feel cold, heat or pain and it gives you your sense of touch. So as you can imagine, if your skin gets burned it can be very serious. First aid is a very important first step in the treatment of burns.

Causes of burns

You can get burned by a variety of things: hot liquids, steam, fire, radiation (by being close to high heat or fire, etc), the sun, electricity or chemicals.

Types of burns

There are three types of burns. Burns are called first, second or third degree burns,

depending on

which layers of the skin are burned.

◎ First degree burns These affect only the top layer of the skin. These burns are not serious and should feel better within a day or two. Examples include mild sunburn and burns caused by touching a hot pan, stove or iron for a moment.

◎ Second degree burns These affect both the top and the second layer of the skin. These burns are serious and take a few weeks to heal. Examples include severe sunburn and burns caused by hot liquids.

◎ Third degree burns These affect all three layers of the skin and any tissue and organs under the skin. Examples include burns caused by electric shocks, burning clothes, or severe petrol fires. These burns cause very severe injuries and the victim must go to hospital at once.

Characteristics of burns

First degree burns

- ◎ dry, red and mildly swollen
- ◎ mildly painful
- ◎ turn white when pressed

Second degree burns

- ◎ rough, red and swollen
- ◎ blisters
- ◎ watery surface
- ◎ extremely painful

Third degree burns

- ◎ black and white and charred
- ◎ swollen; often tissue under them can be seen
- ◎ little or no pain if nerves are damaged; may be pain around

edge of injured area.

First aid treatment

1 Remove clothing using scissors if necessary unless it is stuck to the burn. Take off other clothing and jewellery near the burn.

2 Cool burns immediately with cool but not icy water. It is best to place burns under gently running water for about 10 minutes. (The cool water stops the burning process, prevents the pain becoming unbearable and reduces swelling.) Do not put cold water on third degree burns.

3 For first degree burns, place cool, clean, wet cloths on them until the pain is not so bad. For second degree burns, keep cloths cool by putting them back in a basin of cold water, squeezing them out and placing them on the burned area over and over again for about an hour until the pain is not so bad.

4 Dry the burned area gently. Do not rob, as this may break any blisters and the wound may get infected.

5 Cover the burned area with a dry, clean bandage that will not stick to the skin. Hold the bandage in place with tape. Never put butter, oil or ointment on burns as they keep the heat in the wounds and may cause infection.

6 If burns are on arms or legs, keep them higher than the heart, if possible. If burns are on the face, the victim should sit up.

7 If the injuries are second or third degree burns, it is vital to get the victim to the doctor or hospital at once.

皮肤是身体必不可少的部分，也是身体的最大器官。皮肤有三层，它们是防病、防毒、抵御太阳有害光线侵害的一道屏障。皮肤的功能十分复杂。皮肤可以保暖或御寒，保持体内水分。正是皮肤使你感到冷热、疼痛，它还使你有触觉。因此，你可以想象到，如果你的皮肤烧伤了，就可能非常严重。在治疗烧伤的过程中，紧急处理是非常重要的第一步。

烧伤的原因：

你可能由于各种原因而烧伤：灼热的液体、水蒸气、火、辐射（由于靠近高温或大火）、阳光、电和化学物品。

烧伤的种类：

烧伤有三类。根据皮肤烧伤的层次分为一度烧伤、二度烧伤和三度烧伤。

一度烧伤：只损伤皮层的最上层。这些烧伤并不严重，应当在一两天内就有好转。例如轻度的晒伤，由于短暂接触热锅、火炉或熨斗而导致的烫伤。

二度烧伤：既损伤了皮肤的最上层，又损伤了皮质的第二层。这些烧伤属于严重的烧伤，需几星期才能痊愈。例如严重的晒伤和灼热的液体所造成的烧伤。

三度烧伤：所有三层皮质以及皮下的组织和器官都受到损害。例如由电击引起的烧伤，因衣服起火引起的烧伤，或因汽油起火引起的烧伤。这些烧伤都属于非常严重的烧伤，受伤者必须立即送往医院。

烧伤的特性：

一度烧伤：· 干燥、发红、微肿

- 微痛
- 受压时变白

二度烧伤：· 粗糙、发红、肿胀

- 起水泡
- 表层渗液
- 极其疼痛

三度烧伤：· 黑、白和焦炭色相间

- 肿胀，可看到皮下组织
- 若损害了神经，则没有疼痛或轻微疼痛，或者在创面四周有疼感

急救处理：

1、除非衣服粘贴在烧伤面上，否则都要把它脱掉（必要时可用剪刀帮助）。靠近创面的其他衣物和首饰也都要取掉。

2、马上用凉水给伤口冲凉，但不能用冰水。最好是把烧伤的部位放在慢速流动的自来水下冲洗大约 10 分钟。（凉水可以阻止烧伤的进程，可以防止无法忍受的疼痛，还可以减轻肿胀程度）。三度烧伤不可用冷水冲。

3、对于一度烧伤的患者，要把清凉干净的湿布放在烧伤面上，直到疼痛感较轻时为止。对于二度烧伤，要保持湿布清凉，需把湿布放回冷水盆中，拧出水后再放在烧伤面上，这样要反反复复地做一个小时左右，直到不太痛时为止。

-
- 4、轻轻地把烧伤面弄干，但不要擦拭，因为这样做可能会擦破水泡，伤口会感染。
 - 5、用干而清洁又不粘皮肤的绷带盖住烧伤面，用胶布把绷带固定。千万不要在烧伤处涂黄油、油或软膏，因为这会使里面的热散不出去，而且还可能导致感染。
 - 6、如果烧伤的部位在臂部和腿部，尽可能把手臂或腿脚抬高到高于心脏的位置。如果是面部烧伤，伤者则应该坐起来。
 - 7、如果属于二度或三度烧伤，就必须立即把患者送往医院或送去看医生。

HEROIC REENAGER RECEIVES AWARD 英雄青年获奖记

Seventeen-year-old teenager, John Janson, was honoured at the Lifesaver Awards last night in Rivertown for giving lifesaving first aid on his neighbour after a shocking knife attack.

John was presented with his award at a ceremony which recognized the bravery of ten people who had saved the life of another.

John was studying in his room when he heard screaming. When he and his father rushed outside, a man ran from the scene. They discovered that Anne Slade, mother of three, had been stabbed repeatedly with a knife. She was lying in her front garden bleeding very heavily. Her hands had almost been cut off.

It was John's quick action and knowledge of first aid that saved Ms Slade's life. He immediately asked a number of nearby people for bandages, but when nobody could put their hands on any, his father got some tea towels and tape from their house. John used these to treat the most severe injuries to Ms Slade's hands. He slowed the bleeding by applying pressure to the wounds until the police and ambulance arrived.

"I'm proud of what I did but I was just doing what I'd been taught," John said.

John had taken part in the Young Lifesaver Scheme at his high school. When congratulating John, Mr Alan Southerton, Director of the Young Lifesaver Scheme said, "There is no doubt that John's quick thinking and the first aid skills he learned at school saved Ms Slade's life. It shows that a knowledge of first aid can make a real difference."

Before receiving their awards last night, John and the nine other Life Savers attended a special reception yesterday hosted by the Prime Minister.

17 岁的青年约翰·詹森昨晚在弗镇的救生员颁奖大会上领奖，因为他在一次骇人听闻的持刀袭击案件发生后，为邻居实施了紧急救援。

在颁奖大会上，约翰被授予奖赏。大会共表彰了抢救他人生命的十个人的勇敢行为。

(那天)约翰正在房里学习，突然听到一声尖叫，他和父亲赶紧冲出去，发现一名男子从现场逃跑，而三个孩子的母亲安·斯莱德被人连捅了数刀。她躺在前花园的地上，流血不止。她的双手几乎被砍断了。

正是约翰快捷的动作和急救知识救了斯莱德女士的命。他立即向附近的一些人要绷带，当他们都找不到绷带的时候，他的父亲从屋里拿出一些擦杯盘的布和胶带来。约翰就用这些东西

把斯莱德手上最严重的伤口包扎起来。他使劲地按住伤口，使血流得慢些，一直等到警察和救护车的到来。

约翰说：“我为自己所做的事感到自豪，不过，我所做的都是以前别人教会我做的事。”

约翰在读高中时就参加了青年救生员组织。该组织的主任艾伦·萨瑟顿先生在向约翰表示祝贺时说：“毫无疑问，是约翰敏捷的思维和在学校学到的急救技术，挽救了斯莱德女士的生命。这表明懂得急救知识的确能发挥重要作用。”

约翰和其他九位救生员在昨晚领奖时，还出席了由首相主持的特殊的招待会。

选修 6 Unit 1 Art-Reading

A SHORT HISTORY OF WESTERN PAINTING 西方绘画艺术简史

Art is influenced by the customs and faith of a people. Styles in Western art have changed many times. As there are so many different styles of Western art, it would be impossible to describe all of them in such a short text. Consequently, this text will describe only the most important ones, starting from the sixth century AD.

The Middle Ages (5th to the 15th century AD)

During the Middle Ages, the main aim of painters was to represent religious themes. A conventional artist of this period was not interested in showing nature and people as they really were. A typical picture at this time was full of religious symbols, which created a feeling of respect and love for God. But it was evident that ideas were changing in the 13th century when painters like Giotto di Bondone began to paint religious scenes in a more realistic way.

The Renaissance (15th to 16th century)

During the Renaissance, new ideas and values gradually replaced those held in the Middle Ages. People began to concentrate less on religious themes and adopt a more humanistic attitude to life. At the same time painters returned to classical Roman and Greek ideas about art. They tried to paint people and nature as they really were. Rich people wanted to possess their own paintings, so they could decorate their superb palaces and great houses. They paid famous artists to paint pictures of themselves, their houses and possessions as well as their activities and achievements.

One of the most important discoveries during this period was how to draw things in perspective. This technique was first used by Masaccio in 1428. When people first saw his paintings, they were convinced that they were looking through a hole in a wall at a real scene. If the roles of perspective had not been discovered, no one would have been able to paint such realistic pictures.

By coincidence, oil paints were also developed at this time, which made the colours used in paintings look richer and deeper. Without the new paints and the new technique, we would not be able to see the many great masterpieces for which this period is famous.

Impressionism (late 19th to early 20th century)

In the late 19th century, Europe changed a great deal. from a mostly agricultural society to a mostly industrial one. Many people moved from the countryside to the new cities. There were many new inventions and social changes. Naturally, these changes also led to new painting styles. Among the painters who broke away from the traditional style of painting were the Impressionists, who lived and worked in Paris.

The Impressionists were the first painters to work outdoors. They were eager to show how light and shadow fell on objects at different times of day. However, because natural light changes so quickly, the Impressionists had to paint quickly. Their paintings were not as detailed as those of earlier painters. At first, many people disliked this style of painting and became very angry about it. They said that the painters were careless and their paintings were ridiculous.

Modern Art (20th century to today)

At the time they were created, the Impressionist paintings were controversial, but today they are accepted as the beginning of what we call "modern art". This is because the Impressionists encouraged artists to look at their environment in new ways. There are scores of modern art styles, but without the Impressionists, many of these painting styles might not exist. On the one hand, some modern art is abstract; that is, the painter does not attempt to paint objects as we see them with our eyes, but instead concentrates on certain qualities of the object, using colour, line and shape to represent them. On the other hand, some paintings of modern art are so realistic that they look like photographs. These styles are so different. Who can predict what painting styles there will be in the future?

艺术是受着人民生活习俗和信仰的影响的。西方的艺术风格经历了多次变革。由于西方的艺术风格多种多样,在短短的一篇课文里不可能进行全面的描述。因此,本文只谈及从公元 6 世纪以来最主要的几种艺术风格。

中世纪(公元 5 世纪到 15 世纪)

在中世纪,画家的主要任务是把宗教的主题表现出来。一个传统的艺术家无意于如实地展现自然和人物。那个时期的典型的绘画充满了宗教的(象)特征,体现出了对上帝的爱戴与敬重。但是,很显然到了 13 世纪时,观念发生变化,像乔托这样的画家开始以一种比较现实的风格来画宗教场景。

文艺复兴时期(15 世纪到 16 世纪)

在文艺复兴时期,新的思想和价值观逐渐取代了中世纪思想和价值观。人们开始较少关注宗教主题 而采取一种更人性化的生活态度。同时画家们回到了罗马、希腊的古典艺术理念

上。他们力争如实地画出 人物和自然。富人们想拥有自己的艺术品并用来装饰自己的高级宫殿和豪宅,他们出价聘请著名艺术家来 为自己画像,画自己的房屋和其他财物,以及他们的活动和成就。

在此期间,最重要的发现之一就是如何用透视法来画出事物。这一手法是 1428 年由马萨乔第一次使用的。当人们第一次看到他的画时,还以为是透过墙上的小洞来观看真实的场景,并对此深信不疑。如果 没有发现透视法,人们就不可能画出如此逼真的画。巧合的是这一时期油画颜料也得到了发展,它使得绘 画的色彩看上去更丰富、更深沉。没有新的颜料和新的(绘画)手法,我们就不能看到很多使这一时代著名的杰作。

印象派时期(19 世纪后期到 20 世纪初期)

19 世纪后期,欧洲发生了巨大的变化,从以农业为主的社会变成了以工业为主的社会。许多人从农村 迁入到新城市。有着许多新发明,还有许多社会变革。这些变革也自然而然地促成了新的绘画风格。在那 些突破传统画法的画家中有生活和工作在法国巴黎的印象派画家

。

印象派画家是第一批室外写景的画家。他们急切地想把一天中不同时间投射到物体上的光线和阴影呈 现出来。然而由于自然光的变化很快,印象派画家们必须很快地作画,因此,他们的画就不像以前那些画 家们的画那样细致了。起初,许多人都不喜欢这种画法,甚至还怒不可遏。他们说这些画家作画时漫不经 心、粗枝大叶,而他们的作品更是荒谬可笑。

现代艺术(20 世纪至今)

在印象派作品的创建初期,它们是存在着争议的,但是如今已被人们接受而成为现在我们所说的“现 代艺术”的始祖了。这是因为印象派鼓励画家用一种崭新的视角看待他们的环境。如今,现代艺术风格有 好几十种,然而如果没有印象派,那么这许多不同的风格就不可能存在。一方面,有些现代艺术是抽象的, 也就是说,画家并不打算把我们眼睛看到的東西如实地画出来,而是集中展现物体的某些品质特性,用色 彩、线条和形状把它们呈现出来。而另一方面,有些现代派的艺术作品却是那么写实,看上去就像是照片。 这些风格如此不同。谁能预言将来会有什么样的绘画艺术风格?

THE BEST OF MANHATTAN'S ART GALLERIES 曼哈顿艺术画廊荟萃

The Frick Collection (5th Avenue and E.70th Street)

Many art lovers would rather visit this small art gallery than any other in New York. Henry Clay Frick, a rich New Yorker, died in 1919, leaving his house, furniture and art collection to the American people. Frick had a preference for pre-twentieth century Western paintings, and these are well-represented in this excellent collection. You can also explore Frick's beautiful home and garden which are well worth a Visit.

Guggenheim Museum(5th Avenue and 88th Street)

This museum owns 5,000 superb modern paintings, sculptures and drawings. These art works are not all displayed at the same time. The exhibition is always changing. It will appeal to those who love Impressionist and Post-Impressionist paintings. The Guggenheim Museum building is also world-famous. When you walk into gallery, you feel as if you were inside a fragile, white seashell. The best way to see the paintings is to start from the top floor and walk down to the bottom. There are no stairs just a circular path. The museum also has an excellent restaurant.

Metropolitan Museum of Art (5th Avenue and 82nd Street)

The reputation of this museum lies in the variety of its art collection. This covers more than 5,000 years of civilization from many parts of the world, including America, Europe, China, Egypt, other African countries and South America. The museum displays more than just the visual delights of art. It introduces you to ancient ways of living. You can visit an Egyptian temple, a fragrant Ming garden, a typical room in an 18th century French house and many other special exhibitions.

Museum of Modern Art (53rd Street, between 5th and 6th Avenues)

It is amazing that so many great works of art from the late 19th century to the 21st century are housed in the same museum. The collection of Western art includes paintings by such famous artists as Monet, Van Gogh, Picasso and Matisse. A few words of warning: the admission price is not cheap and the museum is often very crowded.

Whitney Museum of American Art (945 Madison Avenue, near 75th Street)

The Whitney holds an excellent collection of contemporary American painting and sculpture. There are no permanent displays in this museum and exhibitions change all the time. Every two years, the Whitney holds a special exhibition of new art by living artists. The museum also shows videos and films by contemporary video artists.

弗里克收藏馆(第 5 大道和第 70 街大道之间)

在纽约, 比起其他艺术馆许多艺术爱好者都更乐意参观这家小型艺术陈列馆。亨利·克莱·弗里克是纽约的一位富豪, 于 1919 年去世, 把他的房子、家具和艺术收藏品全部留给了美国人民。弗里克对 20 世纪以前的西方绘画有偏爱, 而在这个陈列馆的珍藏品里这些绘画得以很好展出。你还可以好好考察一下弗里克美丽的故居和花园, 它们是很值得一看的。

古根海姆博物馆(第 5 大道和第 88 街交汇处)

这家博物馆拥有 5000 幅非常好的现代油画、雕塑和素描。这些艺术品并不是同时展出的, 展品总是在不断地更换。展览将吸引印象派和后印象派作品的爱好者。古根海姆博物馆的大楼也是世界闻名的。当你走进画廊的时候, 你会觉得你进入了一个易碎的白色贝壳之中。看画展最好是从顶层看起, 一直往下看到底层。展厅里没有楼梯, 只有一条环形的小道。博物馆里还有一家极好的餐馆。

大都会艺术博物馆(第 5 大道与第 82 街交汇处)

这家博物馆以收藏艺术品种类繁多而享有盛名。它的艺术品收藏涵盖了 5000 多年来世界上众多国家的文明史, 其中包括美洲、欧洲、中国、埃及、其他非洲国家和南美洲。这家博物馆展出的不只是可以看得见的艺术之美, 它还向你介绍了古代的生活方式。你可以看到埃及的寺庙, 馥郁的明朝花园, 18 世纪法国住宅中的典型房间, 以及许多其他特殊展品。

现代艺术博物馆(第 53 街, 位于第 5 和第 6 大道之间)

令人惊奇的是, 在同一家博物馆里竟能容纳下 19 世纪后期到 21 世纪的如此众多的名家巨作。西方艺术的收藏包括有莫奈、凡高、毕加索和马蒂斯等著名艺术家的作品。有几句话需要提醒你注意: 博物馆票价不菲, 而且常常十分拥挤。

惠特尼美国艺术博物馆(麦迪逊大道 945 号, 靠近第 75 街)

惠特尼博物馆藏有极好的当代美国绘画和雕塑品。馆内没有永久性的展出, 展品都是随时更换的。惠特尼博物馆每两年有一次特殊的展览, 展品是仍然在世的艺术家们的新作。这家博物馆还展出当代影视艺术家的录像和电影作品。

选修 6 Unit 2 Poems-Reading

A FEW SIMPLE FORMS OF ENGLISH POEMS 英语诗歌的几种简单形式

There are various reasons why people write poetry. Some poems tell a story or describe something in a way that will give the reader a strong impression. Others try to convey certain emotions. Poets use many different forms of poetry to express themselves. In this text, however, we will look at a few of the simpler forms.

Some of the first poetry a young child learns in English is nursery rhymes. These rhymes like the one on the right (A) are still a common type of children's poetry. The language is concrete but imaginative, and they delight small children because they rhyme, have strong rhythm and a lot of repetition. The poems may not make sense and even seem contradictory, but they are easy to learn and recite. By playing with the words in nursery rhymes, children learn about language.

A Hush, little baby, don't say a word, Papa's going to buy you a mockingbird. If that mockingbird won't sing, Papa's going to buy you a diamond ring. If that diamond ring turns to brass, Papa's going to buy you a looking-glass. If that looking-glass gets broke, Papa's going to buy you a billy-goat. If that billy-goat runs away, Papa's going to buy you another today.

One of the simplest kinds of poems are those like B and C that list things. List poems have a flexible line length and repeated phrases which give both a pattern and a rhythm to the poem. Some rhyme (like B) while others do not (like C).

B I saw a fish-portal all on fire
 I saw a fish-pond all on fire,
 I saw a house bow to a squire,
 I saw a person twelve-feet high,
 I saw a cottage in the sky,
 I saw a balloon made of lead,
 I saw a coffin drop down dead,
 I saw two sparrows run a race,
 I saw two horses making lace,
 I saw a girl just like a cat,
 I saw a kitten wear a hat,
 I saw a man who saw these too,
 And said though strange they all were true.

C Our first football match

We would have won ...
if Jack had scored that goal,
if we'd had just a few more minutes,
if we had trained harder,
if Ben had passed the ball to Joe,
if we'd had thousands of fans screaming,
if I hadn't taken my eye off the ball,
if we hadn't stayed up so late the night before,
if we hadn't taken it easy,
if we hadn't run out of energy.

We would have won ...
if we'd been better!

Another simple form of poem that students can easily write is the cinquain, a poem made up of five lines. With these, students can convey a strong picture in just a few words. Look at the examples (D and E) on the top of the next page.

D Brother Beautiful, athletic Teasing, shouting, laughing Friend and enemy too Mine

E Summer Sleepy, salty Drying, drooping, dreading Week in, week out Endless

F A fallen blossom Is coming back to the branch. Look, a butterfly!
(by Moritake)

G Snow having melted, The whole village is brimful Of happy children.

(by Issa)

Haiku is a Japanese form of poetry that is made up of 17 syllables. It is not a traditional form of English poetry, but is very popular with English writers. It is easy to write and, like the cinquain, can give a clear picture and create a special feeling using the minimum of words. The two haiku poems (F and G) above are translations from the Japanese.

H Where she awaits her husband On and on the river flows. Never looking back, Transformed into stone. Day by day upon the mountain top, wind and rain revolve. Should the traveller return, this stone would utter speech.,

(by Wang Jian)

Did you know that English speakers also enjoy other forms of Asian poetry - Tang poems from China in particular? A lot of Tang poetry has been translated into English. This Tang poem (H) is a translation from the Chinese.

With so many different forms of poetry to choose from, students may eventually want to write poems of their own. It is easier than you might think and certainly worth a try!

人们写诗有着各种各样的理由。有些诗是为了叙事，或者说是描述某件事，并给读者以强烈的印象。而有些诗则是为了传达某种感情。诗人用许多不同格式的诗来表达自己的情感。本文只谈了几种格式比较简单的诗。

最早用英文写的诗是童谣。孩子们很小就学习童谣。像下边的这首童谣（A）至今仍然是常见的。这些童谣能使俏皮孩子们快乐，因为它们节奏感强并且押韵，而且重复多遍。这样就容易学，也容易背。通过童谣中的文字游戏，教孩子们学习语言。

(A) 小宝宝，别吵吵，爸爸给你买个小哩鸟。小哩鸟，不会唱，爸爸给你买个钻石戒。钻石戒，变成铜，爸爸给你买个小镜子。小镜子，打破了，爸爸给你买个小山羊。小山羊，跑掉了。爸爸今天再去买一只。

像(B)和(C)这样列举事物的清单诗是诗歌中最简单的一种，学生可以自己动手写。清单诗可以重复一些短语和韵脚(如B)，但有一些也不是这样(如C)。

(B) 我看到鱼塘在燃烧 我看到鱼塘在燃烧，我看到房子向地主哈腰，我看到人高一丈八，我看到茅屋在天郊，我看到气球用铝做。我看到棺材把死人抛。我看到两只麻雀在赛跑，我看到两匹马儿绣花包。我看到姑娘像只猫，我看到小猫戴花帽。我看到有人在一旁瞄，虽奇怪，但也把实情报。

(C) 我们的第一场球赛 我们本来会得冠军……如果杰克踢进了那个球，如果我们还有几分钟，如果我们训练得更严格，如果本把球传给了乔，如果有大批球迷助威，如果我死死盯住球，如果我们头晚不熬夜，如果我们没有太大意，如果我们没有精疲力竭，我们本来会得冠军……如果我们再干得好一些！

另外，一种学生容易写的简体诗是由五行组成的，叫做五行诗。用五行诗，学生可以用少量的词语传递一幅动人的画面。请看下面的(D)和(E)两个例子。

(D) 兄弟 爱美，又爱运动爱闹，爱叫，又爱笑 是我的朋友 也是我的敌人

(E) 夏天 困乏，刺激 干涸，枯萎，恐怖 周而复始 永无止境

俳句诗(Haiku)是一种日本诗，由17个音节组成。它不属英诗的传统形式，但是在说英语的人们中间，这种诗也是很流行的。它容易写，而且像五行诗一样，它可用很少的词语呈现出一幅清晰的画面，表达出一种特殊的感情。下面两首俳句诗下面的(F)和(G)就是由日文翻译而来的。

(F) 落下的花朵 回顾到树枝上。瞧啊，是个蝴蝶！(作者：moritake)

(G) 雪儿溶化了，整个村庄充满着欢乐的儿童。(作者：Issa)

你知道吗？说英语的人也借另外一种亚洲诗，那就是中国的唐诗，许多唐诗已经翻译成英文了。这些诗都译成了自由体，说英语的人都喜欢模仿它。下面这首唐诗就是从中文译成英文的。

(H) 望夫石 王 健 望夫处，江悠悠。化为石，不回头。山头日日风复雨，行人归来石应语。

I'VE SAVED THE SUMMER 我保留了夏天

I've saved the summer
And I give it all to you
To hold on winter mornings
When the snow is new.

I've saved some sunlight
If you should ever need
A place away from darkness
Where your mind can feed.

And for myself I've kept your smile
When you were but nineteen,

Till you're older you'll not know
What brave young smiles can mean.

I know no answers
To help you on your way
The answers lie somewhere
At the bottom of the day.

But if you've a need for love
I'll give you all I own
It might help you down the road
Till you've found your own.

(by Rod McKuen)

我把夏天留下，全都交给你。
当雪花儿初降时，让冬天的早晨停住。
我把阳光留下，万一你需要它。
在那远离黑暗的地方，你的心灵会得到补养。
那年你芳龄十九，我就珍藏了你的微笑。
等你长大成人以后，才知道年轻勇敢的微笑的奥秘。
我不知道有什么办法，帮你踏上你人生的旅程。
办法也许就在某处：在白天结束的那个时辰。
如果你需要爱，我会献上我所有的爱。
它也许能帮你踏上旅程，直到你也找到属于你的爱。

选修 6 Unit 3 A healthy life-Reading 一种健康的生活方式

ADVICE FROM GRANDAD 爷爷的忠告

Dear James,

It is a beautiful day here and I am sitting under the big tree at the end of the garden. I have just returned from a long bike ride to an old castle. It seems amazing that at my age I am still fit enough to cycle 20 kilometres in an afternoon. It's my birthday in two weeks time and I'll be 82 years old! I think my long and active life must be due to the healthy life I live.

This brings me to the real reason for my letter, my dear grandson. Your mother tells me that you started smoking some time ago and now you are finding it difficult to give it up. Believe me, I know how easy it is to begin smoking and how tough it is to stop. You see, during adolescence I also smoked and became addicted to cigarettes.

By the way, did you know that this is because you become addicted in three different ways? First, you can become physically addicted to nicotine, which is one of the hundreds of chemicals in cigarettes. This means that after a while your body becomes accustomed to having nicotine in it. So when the drug leaves your body, you get withdrawal symptoms. I remember feeling bad-tempered and sometimes even in pain. Secondly, you become addicted through habit. As you know, if you do the same thing over and over again, you begin to do it automatically. Lastly, you can become mentally addicted. I believed I was happier and more relaxed after having a cigarette, so I began to

think that I could only feel good when I smoked. I was addicted in all three ways, so it was very difficult to quit. But I did finally manage.

When I was young, I didn't know much about the harmful effects of smoking. I didn't know, for example, that it could do terrible damage to your heart and lungs or that it was more difficult for smoking couples to become pregnant. I certainly didn't know their babies may have a smaller birth weight or even be abnormal in some way. Neither did I know that my cigarette smoke could affect the health of non-smokers. However, what I did know was that my girlfriend thought I smelt terrible. She said my breath and clothes smelt, and that the ends of my fingers were turning yellow. She told me that she wouldn't go out with me again unless I stopped! I also noticed that I became breathless quickly, and that I wasn't enjoying sport as much. When I was taken off the school football team because I was unfit, I knew it was time to quit smoking.

I am sending you some advice I found on the Internet. It might help you to stop and strengthen your resolve. I do hope so because I want you to live as long and healthy a life as I have.

Love from
Grandad

亲爱的詹姆士：

今天，这儿天气晴朗。现在，我正坐在花园尽头的那棵大树底下。我骑自行车跑了很长一段路，一直到了古城堡，刚刚回来。感到不可思议吧，像我这样的年纪，身体健康而且能在一个下午骑车跑 20 公里。再过两个礼拜就是我 82 岁的生日了！我想我之所以长寿而且精力充沛，要归功于我的健康生活。

这就是我写信给你的真正原因，我亲爱的孙子。你妈妈告诉我，你已经开始吸烟了，而且还很难把它戒掉。相信我吧，我知道，吸烟容易戒烟难。你知道，当我还是一个十几岁的孩子的时候，我也吸过烟，而且还上了瘾。这儿我想顺便问你一个问题，你知道上瘾有三个方面的原因吗？

身体对尼古丁有瘾，尼古丁是香烟里几百种化学物质之一。这就是说，过了一段时间以后，你的身体习惯了香烟里的尼古丁，一旦你的体内没有这种麻醉剂了，你就会感到不舒服、烦躁，甚至痛苦。你也可能因为习惯的原因而上瘾，你知道，如果你反反复复地做同一件事情，你就会自觉地做它。最后，上瘾还有心理上的原因。有的人认为，抽了一支烟后，他就会感到轻松愉快，于是就以为抽烟才能使感觉良好。我想我之所以上瘾是有着这三个方面的原因的，因此，要戒烟就很难。但是我最后还是戒掉了。

在我年轻的时候，关于吸烟的危害性我知道得并不多。当时，我不知道抽烟能严重侵害人的心脏和肺部，也不知道吸烟的夫妇生育能力会下降。我更不知道，我自己吸烟还会损害那些不吸烟人的健康。然而，我的的确确知道，我的女朋友觉得我的烟味很难闻。她说我的呼吸、我的衣服都有烟的味道，我的手指头都变黄了。她说在我把烟戒掉之前她是不会同我一起外出的。我也发现我跑得不如以前那么快，也不像以前那样爱好运动了。而当因为动作慢而被校足球队除名之后，我才知道该是我戒烟的时候了。

我把我从网上找到的一些忠告寄给你，也许对你戒烟有所帮助。我的确希望你把它戒掉，因为我希望你能像我这样活得健康长寿。

爱你的爷爷

Reading and discussing

Before you read the poster below, discuss what you know about HIV/AIDS with your classmates. Make a list of words that you might come across in this poster.

HIV/AIDS: ARE YOU AT RISK? HIV 病毒/艾滋病：你是否面临危险？

HIV is a virus. A virus is a very small living thing that causes disease. There are many different viruses, for example, the flu virus or the SARS virus. HIV weakens a person's immune system; that is, the part of the body that fights disease. You can have HIV in your blood for a long time, but eventually HIV will damage your immune system so much that your body can no longer fight disease. This stage of the illness is called AIDS. If you develop AIDS, your chances of survival are very small.

HIV is spread through blood or the fluid that the body makes during sex. For a person to become infected, blood or sexual fluid that carries the virus, has to get inside the body through broken skin or by injection. One day scientists will find a cure for HIV/AIDS.

Until that happens, you need to protect yourself. Here are some things you can do to make sure you stay safe.

If you inject drugs:

do not share your needle with anyone else. Blood from another person can stay on or in the needle.

If a person has HIV and you use the same needle, you could inject the virus into your own blood.

do not share anything else that a person has used while injecting drugs. Blood could have spilt on it.

If you have sex with a male or a female:

use a condom. This will prevent sexual fluid passing from one person to another.

The following statements are NOT true.

A person cannot get HIV the first time they have sex. WRONG. If one sexual partner has HIV, the other partner could become infected.

You can tell by looking at someone whether or not they have HIV. WRONG. Many people carrying HIV look perfectly healthy. It is only when the disease has progressed to AIDS that a person begins to look sick.

Only homosexuals get AIDS. WRONG. Anyone who has sex with a person infected with HIV/AIDS risks getting the virus. Women are slightly more likely to become infected than men.

If you hug, touch or kiss someone with AIDS or visit them in their home, you will get HIV/AIDS. WRONG. You can only get the disease from blood or sexual fluid. Unfortunately, people with HIV sometimes lose their friends because of prejudice. Many people are afraid that they will get HIV/AIDS from those infected with HIV/AIDS. For the same reason, some AIDS patients cannot find anyone to look after them when they are sick.

You can get HIV/AIDS from mosquitoes. WRONG. There is no evidence of this.

HIV 是一种病毒（人体免疫缺损病毒）。病毒是引发疾病的微生物。它有许多种类。如流感病毒和 SARS 病毒。HIV 病毒破坏人体的免疫系统，也就是说使人体抗衡疾病的免疫功能减弱。在你的血液中，HIV 病毒可以长期存在，但是它最终会使你的免疫系统严重受损，以致使你的身体不再能抗衡疾病。这种疾病到了这个阶段就叫艾滋病。到目前为止，几乎所有得上了艾滋病的人都已经去世。HIV 是通过血液或性交时产生的体液而传播的。携带病毒的血液或体液必须通过皮肤上的创口或通过注射才能进入体内，使人受感染。

将来总有一天会找到医治 HIV 病毒和艾滋病的疗法的。在找到之前，你必须保护你自己。你可以按这里列举的一些注意事项去做，以确保自己的安全：

假如你要注射药物：

不要同别人共用注射针，别人的血液可能会留在针头内外。如果某人有 HIV 病毒，而你又用了同一个注射针，你就有可能把别人的病毒注入到你的血液中来。

在注射药物时，不得共用携带病毒的患者所用的其他东西，因为血液可能会溅到这些物品上。假如你同（男或女）人性交：

要使用避孕套。它可以防止性交时产生的体液的传入。下列这些说法都是错误的：

初次性交的人不可能染上 HIV 病毒。错。如果性交的某一方有了 HIV 病毒，另一方就有可能传染上。通过观察，你可以看出某人是否带有 HIV 病毒。错。许多携带 HIV 病毒的患者看上去十分健康。只有当这种病毒发展成艾滋病时，人才会显出病态。

只有同性恋者才得艾滋病。错。任何人如果同感染了 HIV 病毒的人性交，他们就有染上这种病毒的危险。女性感染病毒的可能性比男性稍微大一些。

如果你同艾滋病患者拥抱、接触或亲吻，或者去他们家做客，你就会从他们那里感染上 HIV 病毒或得艾滋病。错。你只可能通过血液或性交时的体液才能传染上这种病。不幸的是，携带 HIV 病毒的患者有时会失去他们的朋友。因为人们担心他们会从患者那儿染上 HIV 病毒，感染上艾滋病。由于相同的理由，有些艾滋病患者在生病时找不到任何人来照顾他们。

蚊子可以传染 HIV 病毒和艾滋病。错。目前还没有证据说明这一点。

选修 6 Unit 4 Global warming-Reading

THE EARTH IS BECOMING WARMER-BUT DOES IT MATTER? 全球在变暖——这会带来什么影响吗？

During the 20th century the temperature of the earth rose about one degree Fahrenheit. That probably does not seem much to you or me, but it is a rapid increase when compared to other natural changes. So how has this come about and does it matter? Earth Care's Sophie Armstrong explores these questions.

There is no doubt that the earth is becoming warmer (see Graph 1) and that it is human activity

that has caused this global warming rather than a random but natural phenomenon.

All scientists subscribe to the view that the increase in the earth's temperature is due to the burning of fossil fuels like coal, natural gas and oil to produce energy. Some byproducts of this process are called "greenhouse" gases, the most important one of which is carbon dioxide. Dr Janice Foster explains: "There is a natural phenomenon that scientists call the 'greenhouse effect'. This is when small amounts of gases in the atmosphere, like carbon dioxide, methane and water vapour, trap heat from the sun and therefore warm the earth. Without the 'greenhouse effect', the earth would be about thirty-three degrees Celsius cooler than it is. So, we need those gases. The problem begins when we add huge quantities of extra carbon dioxide into the atmosphere. It means that more heat energy tends to be trapped in the atmosphere causing the global temperature to go up."

We know that the levels of carbon dioxide have increased greatly over the last 100 to 150 years. It was a scientist called Charles Keeling, who made accurate measurements of the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere from 1957 to 1997. He found that between these years the carbon dioxide in the atmosphere went up from around 315 parts to around 370 parts per million (see Graph 2).

All scientists accept this data. They also agree that it is the burning of more and more fossil fuels that has resulted in this increase in carbon dioxide. So how high will the temperature increase

go? Dr Janice Foster says that over the next 100 years the amount of warming could be as low as 1 to 1.5 degrees Celsius, but it could be as high as 5 degrees.

However, the attitude of scientists towards this rise is completely different. On the one hand, Dr Foster thinks that the trend which increases the temperature by 5 degrees would be a catastrophe. She says, "We can't predict the climate well enough to know what to expect, but it could be very serious." Others who agree with her think there may be a rise of several metres in the sea level, or predict severe storms, floods, droughts, famines, the spread of diseases and the disappearance of species. On the other hand, there are those, like George Hambley, who are opposed to this view, believe that we should not worry about high levels of carbon dioxide in the air. They predict that any warming will be mild with few bad environmental consequences. In fact, Hambley states, "More carbon dioxide is actually a positive thing. It will make plants grow quicker; crops will produce more; it will encourage a greater range of animals - all of which will make life for human beings better."

Greenhouse gases continue to build up in the atmosphere. Even if we start reducing the amount of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, the climate is going to keep on warming for decades or centuries. No one knows the effects of global warming. Does that mean we should do nothing? Or, are the risks too great?

在 20 世纪期间，地球温度大约升了华氏 1 度。这个数值对你我来说很可能是无所谓的，但是，跟多数自然变化相比较而言，这却是种快速的的增长。这种温度的增长是怎么产生的呢？“关爱地球”组织的索菲·阿姆斯特朗就在探究这些问题。

毫无疑问，地球是在变暖。但是全球变暖的原因是人为的呢，或者仅仅是一种自然现象呢？对于这个问题存在着激烈的争辩。

许多科学家认为，人们为了生产能量而燃烧化石燃料（如煤、天然气和石油等），从而引起了地球温度的升高。这个升温过程的副产品就叫做“温室”气体，其中最重要的就是二氧化碳。贾尼丝·福斯特博士解释说：“你知道，有一种科学称之为„温室效应“的自然现象。这种现象发生在大气层中少量的气体（如二氧化碳、甲烷、水蒸气等）吸收太阳的热量，因而，使地球变暖。如果没有这种„温室效应“，地球的温度将比现在的温度还要低 33 摄氏度左右。因此，我们需要这些气体。而当我们因为燃烧化石燃料而使大气层中增加了大量额外的二氧化碳时，问题就来了。二氧化碳含量的增加意味着更多的热量被困在大气层中，从而引起了全球温度上升。

我们知道，在过去 100~150 年期间，二氧化碳的含量急剧增加了。有一位名叫查尔斯·奎林的科学家曾经把 1957~1997 年期间大气层中二氧化碳的含量做了精确的统计。他发现，在这些年里，大气层中的二氧化碳含量从百万分之三百一十五上升到百万分之三百七十。

所有科学家都接受这个数据。他们还认为，正是由于燃烧的化石燃料越来越多而导致了二氧化碳的增加。然而，科学家们在对待这个问题的态度上却是大不相同的。

贾尼丝·福斯特博士说，在今后的 100 年里，全球变暖的量可能低到 1~1.5 摄氏度，但是也有可能高达 5 摄氏度。有多么糟糕呢？有人认为，全球变暖会导致海平面上升好几米；也有人预言会出现严重的风暴、干旱、饥荒、疫病和物种的绝灭。

在另一方面，还有一些人，像科学家乔治·汉布利，他认为我们不必担心空气中会有高含量的二氧化碳。他还认为，科学家对全球变暖的关注只不过是一种推测罢了。他预言说，变暖的情况不会很严重，对环境的影响也不会太坏。他实际上是这样说的：“二氧化碳的增加实际上是

件好事，它使植物成长更快，庄稼产量更高，还会促进动物的生长——所有这些都能改善人类的生活。”

温室气体继续在大气层中聚集。即使我们开始减少二氧化碳及其他温室气体的含量，在未来几十年几个世纪内，气候仍会持续升温。没有人知道全球变暖会带来什么样的影响。这是不是意味着我们就不必采取什么措施呢？还是说，这样不采取任何措施危险性会很大呢？

WHAT CAN WE DO ABOUT GLOBAL WARMING? 关于全球变暖，我们能干些什么呢？

Dear Earth Care,

I am doing a project on behalf of my school about global warming. Sometimes I feel that individuals can have little effect on such huge environmental problems. However, I still think people should advocate improvements in the way we use energy today. As I'm not sure where to start with my project, I would appreciate any suggestions you may have.

Thank you!

Ouyang Guang

Dear Ouyang Guang,

There are many people who have a commitment like yours, but they do not believe they have the power to do anything to improve our environment. That is not true. Together, individuals can make a difference. We do not have to put up with pollution.

The growth of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide in the air actually comes as a result of many things we do every day. Here are a few suggestions on how to reduce it. They should get you started with your project.

1 We use a lot of energy in our houses. It is OK to leave an electrical appliance on so long as you are using it - if not, turn it off! Do not be casual about this. So if you are not using the lights, the TV, the computer, and so on, turn them off. If you are cold, put on more clothes instead of turning up the heat.

2 Motor vehicles use a lot of energy- so walk or ride a bike if you can.

3 Recycle cans, bottles, plastic bags and newspapers if circumstances allow you to. It takes a lot of energy to make things from new materials, so, if you can, buy things made from recycled materials.

4 Get your parents to buy things that are economical with energy - this includes cars as well as smaller things like fridges and microwaves.

5 Plant trees in your garden or your school yard, as they absorb carbon dioxide from the air and refresh your spirit when you look at them.

6 Finally and most importantly, be an educator. Talk with your family and friends about global warming and tell them what you have learned.

Remember - your contribution counts!

Earth Care

亲爱的“关爱地球”组织：

我正在学校里做一项课题研究——关于全球变暖的问题，我们能做些什么。有时候我觉得，像如此巨大的一个环境问题，个人是起不了什么作用的。我还不清楚我应该从哪里着手我的研究。我希望能得到你们的建议。

谢谢。

欧阳光

亲爱的欧阳光：

有许多人跟你有同感，他们不相信自己有能力来影响环境。但是，这种想法是不正确的。众人拾柴火焰高。我们不必去忍受污染。

温室气体，如二氧化碳，的确是来自我们许多的日常活动。这儿有几条关于减少空气中二氧化碳含量的建议。这些建议应当能够促进你的研究。

在室内我们会用大量的能源。在用电器设备时你可以让它开着，如果不用就把它关掉！因此，你如果不用电灯、电视、电脑等时，要把他们关掉。如果你觉得冷了，就多穿点衣服，而不要把电暖器开大。

机动车要用大量的能源。因此，只要有可能，你就步行或骑自行车吧。

把罐头、瓶子、塑料和报纸回收利用起来。用新材料来做这些东西要花费大量的能源，因此，只要有可能，就买那些用回收材料制成的物品吧。

劝你的父母去买那些节约能源的产品，包括汽车和像冰箱、微波炉之类的小件东西。在你的花园或校园里栽种树木，它们能吸收空气中的二氧化碳。

重要的是，同你的家人和朋友谈一谈全球变暖的问题，并把你学到的东西告诉他们。

记住，你的贡献很有价值。

“关爱地球”组织

选修 6 Unit 5 The power of nature-Reading

AN EXCITING JOB 一份具有刺激性的工作

I have the greatest job in the world. I travel to unusual places and work alongside people from all over the world. Sometimes working outdoors, sometimes in an office, sometimes using scientific equipment and sometimes meeting local people and tourists, I am never bored.

Although my job is occasionally dangerous, I don't mind because danger excites me and makes me feel alive. However, the most important thing about my job is that I help protect ordinary people from one of the most powerful forces on earth - the volcano.

I was appointed as a volcanologist working for the Hawaiian Volcano Observatory (HVO) twenty years ago. My job is collecting information for a database about Mount Kilauea, which is one of the most active volcanoes in Hawaii. Having collected and evaluated the information, I help other scientists to predict where lava from the volcano will flow next and how fast. Our work has saved many lives because people in the path of the lava can be warned to leave their houses. Unfortunately, we cannot move their homes out of the way, and many houses have been covered with lava or burned to the ground.

When boiling rock erupts from a volcano and crashes back to earth, it causes less damage than you might imagine. This is because no one lives near the top of Mount Kilauea, where the rocks fall. The lava that flows slowly like a wave down the mountain causes far more damage because it buries everything in its path under the molten rock. However, the eruption itself is really exciting to watch and I shall never forget my first sight of one. It was in the second week after I arrived in Hawaii. Having worked hard all day, I went to bed early. I was fast asleep when suddenly my bed began shaking and I heard a strange sound, like a railway train passing my window. Having experienced quite a few earthquakes in Hawaii already, I didn't take much notice. I was about to go back to sleep when suddenly my bedroom became as bright as day. I ran out of the house into the back garden where I could see Mount Kilauea in the distance. There had been an eruption from the

side of the mountain and red hot lava was fountaining hundreds of metres into the air. It was an absolutely fantastic sight.

The day after this eruption I was lucky enough to have a much closer look at it. Two other scientists and I were driven up the mountain and dropped as close as possible to the crater that had been formed during the eruption. Having earlier collected special clothes from the observatory, we put them on before we went any closer. All three of us looked like spacemen. We had white protective suits that covered our whole body, helmets, big boots and special gloves. It was not easy to walk in these suits, but we slowly made our way to the edge of the crater and looked down into the red, boiling centre. The other two climbed down into the crater to collect some lava for later study, but this being my first experience, I stayed at the top and watched them.

Today, I am just as enthusiastic about my job as the day I first started. Having studied volcanoes now for many years, I am still amazed at their beauty as well as their potential to cause great damage.

我的工作是世界上最伟大的工作。我跑的地方是稀罕奇特的地方，我见到的是世界各地有趣味的人们，有时在室外工作，有时在办公室里，有时工作中要用科学仪器，有时要会见当地百姓和旅游人士。但是我从不感到厌烦。虽然我的工作偶尔也有危险，但是我并不在乎，因为危险能激励我，使我感到有活力。然而，最重要的是，通过我的工作能保护人们免遭世界最大的自然威力之一，也就是火山的威胁。

我是一名火山学家，在夏威夷火山观测站（HVO）工作。我的主要任务是收集有关基拉韦厄火山的信息，这是夏威夷最活跃的火山之一。收集和评估了这些信息之后，我就帮助其他科学家一起预测下次火山熔岩将往何处流，流速是多少。我们的工作拯救了许多人的生命，因为熔岩要流经之地，老百姓都可以得到离开家园的通知。遗憾的是，我们不可能把他们的家搬离岩浆流过的地方，因此，许多房屋被熔岩淹没，或者焚烧殆尽。

当滚烫沸腾的岩石从火山喷发出来并撞回地面时，它所造成的损失比想象的要小些，这是因为在岩石下落的基拉韦厄火山顶附近无人居住。而顺着山坡下流的火山熔岩造成的损失却大得多，这是因为火山岩浆所流经的地方，一切东西都被掩埋在熔岩下面了。然而火山喷发本身的确是很壮观的，我永远也忘不了我第一次看见火山喷发时的情景。那是在我到达夏威夷后的第二个星期。那天辛辛苦苦地干了一整天，我很早就上床睡觉。我在熟睡中突然感到床铺在摇晃，接着我听到一阵奇怪的声音，就好像一列火车从我的窗外行驶一样。因为我在夏威夷曾经经历过多次地震，所以对这种声音我并不在意。我刚要再睡，突然我的卧室亮如白昼。我赶紧跑出房间，来到后花园，在那儿我能远远地看见基拉韦厄火山。在山坡上，火山爆发了，红色发烫的岩浆像喷泉一样，朝天上喷射达几百米高。真是绝妙的奇景！

就在这次火山喷发的第二天，我有幸做了一次近距离的观察。我和另外两位科学被送到山顶，在离火山爆发期间形成的火山口最靠近的地方才下车。早先从观测站出发时，就带了一些特制的安全服，于是我们穿上安全服再走近火山口。我们三个人看上去就像宇航员一样，我们都穿着白色的防护服遮住全身，戴上了头盔和特别的手套，还穿了一双大靴子。穿着这些衣服走起路来实在不容易，但我们还是缓缓往火山口的边缘走去，并且向下看到了红红的沸腾的中心。另外，两人攀下火山口，去收集供日后研究用的岩浆，我是第一次经历这样的事，所以留在山顶上观察他们。

今天，我还是像开始工作时那样，对工作充满热情。虽然我从事火山研究 20 多年了，但是我对火山的壮丽景色以及它那潜在的巨大破坏力至今仍然感到惊愕不已。

THE LAKE OF HERVEN 天上的湖（天池）

Changbaishan is in Jilin Province, Northeast China. Much of this beautiful, mountainous area is thick forest. Changbaishan is China's largest nature reserve and it is kept in its natural state for the people of China and visitors from all over the world to enjoy. The height of the land varies from 700 metres above sea level to over 2,000 metres and is home to a great diversity of rare plants and animals. Among the rare animals are cranes, black bears, leopards and tigers. Many people come to Changbaishan to study its unique plants and animals. Others come to walk in the mountains, to see the spectacular waterfalls or to bathe in the hot water pools. However, the attraction that arouses the greatest appreciation in the reserve is Tianchi or the Lake of Heaven.

Tianchi is a deep lake that has formed in the crater of a dead volcano on top of the mountain. The lake is 2,194 metres above sea level, and more than 200 metres deep. In winter the surface freezes over. It takes about an hour to climb from the end of the road to the top of the mountain. When you arrive you are rewarded not only with the sight of its clear waters, but also by the view of the other sixteen mountain peaks that surround Tianchi.

There are many stories told about Tianchi. The most well-known concerns three young women from heaven. They were bathing in Tianchi when a bird flew above them and dropped a small fruit onto the dress of the youngest girl. When she picked up the fruit to smell it, it flew into her mouth. Having swallowed the fruit, the girl became pregnant and later gave birth to a handsome boy. It is said that this boy, who had a great gift for languages and persuasion, is the father of the Manchu people.

If you are lucky enough to visit the Lake of Heaven with your loved one, don't forget to drop a coin into the clear blue water to guarantee your love will be as deep and lasting as the lake itself.

长白山在东北的吉林省，这个美丽的山区大部分是茂密的林区。长白山是中国最大的自然保护区，保持着它的原始状态，以供中国人民和世界各地的游客们观赏。这里地面的高度从海拔700米到2,000米不等，是多种多样动植物的生长地。珍稀动物有白鹤、黑熊、豹子和西伯利亚虎。许多人到长白山来研究特有的动植物。另外一些人则是到山里来走一走，看看那些蔚为壮观的瀑布，或者在温水池里泡个澡。然而保护区里最有吸引力的地方则是天池，或者说是天上的湖。

天池是一个深水湖，是由山顶一个死火山的火山口形成的。湖的海拔高度为2,194米，水深超过200米，到冬天，湖面就全部结冰了。从路的末端到山顶约需一个小时。你一到达山顶就会得到回报——你不仅可以看到天池清澈如镜的湖水，而且还可以看到天池四周的16座山峰。天池有着许多传说故事，其中最著名是从天上下凡的三位少女的故事。她们正在天池里洗澡，突然，有一只鸟飞过她们的头顶，并且，把一枚小小的果实掉在最年轻的那位少女的衣服上。当那个少女捡起那枚果实，想要去闻一闻的时候，那枚果实飞进了她的嘴里。姑娘吞食了这个果子，后来就怀了孕。过了一段时间，她生下了一个漂亮的小男孩。据说这个男孩就是满族人的祖先，具有语言天赋和很强的说服力。

如果你有幸和你所爱的人去游天池，别忘了投一枚硬币到清澈碧蓝的水中，以确保你们的爱情像湖水一样深厚、持久。

选修 7 Unit 1 Living well-Reading

MARTY'S STORY 马蒂的故事

Hi, my name is Marry Fielding and I guess you could say that I am "one in a million". In

other words, there are not many people like me. You see, I have a muscle disease which makes me very weak, so I can't run or climb stairs as quickly as other people. In addition, sometimes I am very clumsy and drop things or bump into furniture. Unfortunately, the doctors don't know how to make me better, but I am very outgoing and have learned to adapt to my disability. My motto is: live One day at a time.

Until I was ten years old I was the same as everyone else. I used to climb trees, swim and play football. In fact, I used to dream about playing professional football and possibly representing my country in the World Cup. Then I started to get weaker and weaker, until I could only enjoy football from a bench at the stadium. In the end I went into hospital for medical tests. I stayed there for nearly three months. I think I had at least a billion tests, including one in which they cut out a piece of muscle from my leg and looked at it under a microscope. Even after all that, no one could give my disease a name and it is difficult to know what the future holds.

One problem is that I don't look any different from other people. So sometimes some children in my primary school would laugh, when I got out of breath after running a short way or had to stop and rest halfway up the stairs. Sometimes, too, I was too weak to go to school so my education suffered. Every time I returned after an absence, I felt stupid because I was behind the others.

My life is a lot easier at high school because my fellow students have accepted me. The few who cannot see the real person inside my body do not make me annoyed, and I just ignore them. All in all I have a good life. I am happy to have found many things I can do, like writing and computer programming. My ambition is to work for a firm that develops computer software when I grow up. Last year I invented a computer football game and a big company has decided to buy it from me. I have a very busy life with no time to sit around feeling sorry for myself. As well as going to the movies and football matches with my friends, I spend a lot of time with my pets. I have two rabbits, a parrot, a tank full of fish and a tortoise. To look after my pets properly takes a lot of time but I find it worthwhile. I also have to do a lot of work, especially if I have been away for a while.

In many ways my disability has helped me grow stronger psychologically and become more independent. I have to work hard to live a normal life but it has been worth it. If I had a chance to say one thing to healthy children, it would be this: having a disability does not mean your life is not satisfying. So don't feel sorry for the disabled or make fun of them, and don't ignore them either. Just accept them for who they are, and give them encouragement to live as rich and full a life as you do.

Thank you for reading my story.

你好， 我叫马蒂·菲尔丁。我想你可能会说我是“百万人中才有一个”的那种人。换句话说，世界上像我这样的人并不多见。你瞧，我的肌肉有毛病，使我的身体非常虚弱，所以我不能向别人那样快跑或快步爬楼梯。另外，有时候我还会笨手笨脚、不小心摔掉东西，或磕碰到家具上。不幸的是，医生们不知道如何治好我的病，但是我很开朗乐观，学会了适应身体的残疾。我的座右铭是：活一天算一天。

十岁以前，我跟其他人是一样的。我常常爬树、游泳、踢足球。说实在的，我过去常常梦想我会成为职业球员，代表我的国家参加世界杯足球赛。后来，我的身体开始变得越来越虚弱，以至于只能坐在体育场的长凳上欣赏足球了。最后我到医院去做了检查，住了将近三个月的医院。我想我至少做过十亿次检查了，包括有一次检查，他们从我的腿部切下一小块儿肌肉，放在显微镜下观察。即使做过了所有这些检查，也没有人能够确诊这个病。因此，很难知道将

来会是个什么样子。

问题是我看上去跟平常人一样，因此，当我跑了很短的一段路之后，就喘不过气来，或者爬楼梯才爬到一半就得停下来休息，我的小学同学就会笑我。有时候我的身体太虚弱，上不了学，因此落下了许多功课。每次缺课之后，我就觉得自己很笨，因为我比别人落后了。

我在中学时期的生活（比在小学时）要轻松多了，因为我的同学已经接受了我的状况。还有少数同学看不到我的内心世界，但是我并不生气，只是不去理会他们罢了。总而言之，我生活得挺好。我很高兴我能做许多事情，比如写作和电脑编程。我有雄心壮志，长大后我要在开发电脑软件的公司里工作。去年我开发了一个电脑足球游戏，有一家大公司已经决定从我这儿买走。我的生活很充实，没有时间坐着顾影自怜。除了同我的朋友一起去看电影和足球比赛外，我还花很多时间和我的宠物在一起。我有两只兔子、一只鹦鹉，一缸金鱼和一只乌龟。我得花大量时间来照顾这些宠物，但我觉得很值。此外，我还有好多功课要做，而别是在病了一段时间之后。

在许多方面，我身体的残疾倒使我心理上变得更加坚强，更加独立。我必须努力才能过上正常的生活，但这是值得的。假如我有机会跟健康孩子讲一句话，那么，这句话就是：身体残疾并不意味着生活不美满。因此，不要感到残疾人可怜，或者取笑他们，也别不理睬他们。要接受他们，给他们以鼓励，让他们能像你一样过得丰富多彩、充实美满。

谢谢你读我的故事。

A LETTER TO AN ARCHITECT 致建筑师的一封信

Look at the pictures. Discuss the problems that people with walking difficulties might have in a cinema.

Ms L Sanders
Chief architect
Cinema Designs
44 Hill Street
Bankstown

24 September, 200__

Dear Ms Sanders,

Alice Major
64 Cambridge Street
Bankstown

I read in the newspaper today that you are to be the architect for the new Bankstown cinema. I hope you will not mind me writing to ask if you have thought about the needs of disabled customers. In particular I wonder if you have considered the following things:

1 Adequate access for wheelchairs. It would be handy to have lifts to all parts of the cinema. The buttons in the lifts should be easy for a person in a wheelchair to reach, and the doors be wide enough to enter. In some cinemas, the lifts are at the back of the cinema in cold, unattractive places. As disabled people have to use the lifts, this makes them feel they are not as important as other customers.

2 Earphones for people who have trouble hearing. It would help to fit sets of earphones to all seats, not just to some of them. This would allow hearing-impaired customers to enjoy the

company of their hearing friends rather than having to sit in a special area.

3 Raised seating. People who are short cannot always see the screen. So I'd like to suggest that the seats at the back be placed higher than those at the front so that everyone can see the screen easily. Perhaps there could be a space at the end of each row for people in wheelchairs to sit next to their friends.

4 Toilets. For disabled customers it would be more convenient to place the toilets near the entrance to the cinema. It can be difficult if the only disabled toilet is in the basement a long way from where the film is showing. And if the doors could be opened outwards, disabled customers would be very happy.

5 Car parking. Of course, there are usually spaces specially reserved for disabled and elderly drivers. If they are close to the cinema entrance and/or exit, it is easier for disabled people to get to film in comfort.

Thank you for reading my letter. I hope my suggestions will meet with your approval. Disabled people should have the same opportunities as able-bodied people to enjoy the cinema and to do so with dignity. I am sure many people will praise your cinema if you design it with good access for disabled people. It will also make the cinema owners happy if more people go as they will make higher profits!

Yours sincerely,

Alice Major

桑达斯女士
总建筑师
影院设计公司
希尔街44号
班克斯敦

200-__年9月24日

亲爱的桑达斯女士：

爱丽斯·梅杰
剑桥街64号
班克斯敦

今天我从报上了解到，您将成为班克斯敦新影院的建筑设计师。我希望您不介意我写信询问您是否已考虑到残疾顾客的需要。尤其是以下几点不知您是否考虑到了：

1. 为乘坐轮椅的人进入电影院提供充分的便利。影院内的各个部分都安装电梯就会很方便。电梯的按钮应当让乘坐轮椅的人容易够到，电梯门应足够宽。在有些电影院里，（残疾人专用）电梯设在影院背后阴冷而不显眼的地方。由于残疾人必须要使用这些电梯，这就使残疾人感到比别的观众低一等。
2. 给听力有障碍的人提供耳机。所有座位的旁边都装有耳机，而不是少数几个座位，那会有帮助。这样可以使那些听力有缺陷的观众和那些听力正常的朋友坐在一起欣赏，而不是让前者坐在一个特定的区域。
3. 抬高座位。身体矮小的人常常看不到屏幕。所以我想建议影院后排的座位应该比前排的高，这样每个人都能很容易地看到屏幕。也许可以在每一排的排尾都留出空位，以便坐轮椅的人坐在他们的朋友旁边。
4. 厕所。在影院入口处的附近安排厕所会让残疾人感觉更加方便。只在离放映大厅很远的地

下室为残疾人安排一个厕所，这种作法会给他们带来麻烦。如果厕所的门能设计成向外开，残疾人会很高兴。

5. 停车场。当然还得专门为残疾司机和老年司机安排停车场。如果这些停车场离影院出入口都很近，残疾人就会很轻松地到达影院。

感谢您阅读我的信，希望您能赞成我的建议。残疾人应当和健全人有同样的机会来欣赏电影，同时能保持自己的尊严。如果您设计的电影院能够为残疾人提供方便，那么，我相信许多人都会夸奖您的电影院，而且电影院的老板也会高兴，因为有更多的人能够去看电影了，他们就能赚更多的钱了。

此致 敬礼

爱丽斯·梅杰

选修 7 Unit 2 Robots - Reading

SATISFACTION GURANTEED 包君满意

Larry Belmont worked for a company that made robots. Recently it had begun experimenting with a household robot. It was going to be tested out by Larry's wife, Claire.

Claire didn't want the robot in her house, especially as her husband would be absent for three weeks, but Larry persuaded her that the robot wouldn't harm her or allow her to be harmed. It would be a bonus. However, when she first saw the robot, she felt alarmed. His name was Tony and he seemed more like a human than a machine. He was tall and handsome with smooth hair and a deep voice although his facial expression never changed.

On the second morning Tony, wearing an apron, brought her breakfast and then asked her whether she needed help dressing. She felt embarrassed and quickly told him to go. It was disturbing and frightening that he looked so human.

One day, Claire mentioned that she didn't think she was clever. Tony said that she must feel very unhappy to say that. Claire thought it was ridiculous to be offered sympathy by a robot. But she began to trust him. She told him how she was overweight and this made her feel unhappy. Also she felt her home wasn't elegant enough for someone like Larry who wanted to improve his social position. She wasn't like Gladys Claffern, one of the richest and most powerful women around.

As a favour Tony promised to help Claire make herself smarter and her home more elegant. So Claire borrowed a pile of books from the library for him to read, or rather, scan. She looked at his fingers with wonder as they turned each page and suddenly reached for his hand. She was amazed by his fingernails and the softness and warmth of his skin. How absurd, she thought. He was just a machine.

Tony gave Claire a new haircut and changed the makeup she wore. As he was not allowed to accompany her to the shops, he wrote out a list of items for her. Claire went into the city and bought curtains, cushions, a carpet and bedding. Then she went into a jewellery shop to buy a necklace. When the clerk at the counter was rude to her, she rang Tony up and told the clerk to speak to him. The clerk immediately changed his attitude. Claire thanked Tony, telling him that he was a "dear". As she turned around, there stood Gladys Claffern. How awful to be discovered by her,

Claire thought. By the amused and surprised look on her face, Claire knew that Gladys thought she was having an affair. After all, she knew Claire's husband's name was Larry, not Tony.

When Claire got home, she wept with anger in her armchair. Gladys was everything Claire wanted to be. "You can be like her," Tony told her and suggested that she invite Gladys and her friends to the house the night before he was to leave and Larry was to return. By that time, Tony expected the house to be completely transformed.

Tony worked steadily on the improvements. Claire tried to help once but was too clumsy. She fell off a ladder and even though Tony was in the next room, he managed to catch her in time. He held her firmly in his arms and she felt the warmth of his body. She screamed, pushed him away and ran to her room for the rest of the day.

The night of the party arrived. The clock struck eight. The guests would be arriving soon and Claire told Tony to go into another room. At that moment, Tony folded his arms around her, bending his face close to hers. She cried out "Tony" and then heard him declare that he didn't want to leave her the next day and that he felt more than just the desire to please her. Then the front door bell rang. Tony freed her and disappeared from sight. It was then that Claire realized that Tony had opened the curtains of the front window. Her guests had seen everything !

The women were impressed by Claire, the house and the delicious cuisine. Just before they left, Claire heard Gladys whispering to another woman that she had never seen anyone so handsome as Tony. What a sweet victory to be envied by those women! She might not be as beautiful as them, but none of them had such a handsome lover.

Then she remembered - Tony was just a machine. She shouted "Leave me alone" and ran to her bed. She cried all night. The next morning a car drove up and took Tony away.

The company was very pleased with Tony's report on his three weeks with Claire. Tony had protected a human being from harm. He had prevented Claire from harming herself through her own sense of failure. He had opened the curtains that night so that the other women would see him and Claire, knowing that there was no risk to Claire's marriage. But even though Tony had been so clever, he would have to be rebuilt - you cannot have women failing in love with machines.

拉里·贝尔蒙特在一家生产机器人的公司里工作。最近，该公司要对一个家用机器人进行试验。这项试验将由拉里的夫人克莱尔来尝试。

克莱尔并不想把机器人留在家里，特别是在她丈夫离家三周的这个期间。但是克莱尔被拉里说服了。他说，机器人不会伤害她，也不会让别人来伤害她。这样会是个意外的收获。然而她初次见到机器人的时候就感到有点吃惊。机器人名叫托尼，看上去更像一个人，而不像台机器。他虽然面部表情毫无变化，但是个子高大，相貌英俊，头发平整，声音低沉浑厚。

第二天早晨，托尼系着围裙，给她端来了早餐，然后问她是否需要帮忙穿衣打扮。她感到有点儿不好意思，很快就打发他走了。机器人如此通人性，这使她觉得心烦和害怕。

有一天，克莱尔说起，她觉得她自己并不聪明。托尼则说，克莱尔一定是很不高兴，才会说出这样的话来。克莱尔觉得，机器人会向她表示同情，这有点荒唐可笑。但是她开始信任托尼了。她告诉托尼她太胖了，这让她很不高兴。还有对于像拉里这样很想提高社会地位的人来说，她的家也不够高雅。她跟格拉迪斯·克拉芬不一样，格拉迪斯是远近闻名的有钱有势的女人。

托尼为让克莱尔高兴，答应帮助她，使她变得漂亮，使她的家变得高雅大方。于是克莱尔从图书馆借来一堆书给托尼阅读，或者说给他浏览一下。她惊奇的看着他的手指翻动着书页，

忍不住突然伸出手来摸他的手指。他的手指甲和他那柔软温暖的皮肤使她感到大为惊异。她在想，这是多么可笑啊，他只不过是一台机器呀！

托尼给克莱尔换了个发型，又改变了化妆风格。因为不允许托尼陪克莱尔去商店，所以托尼就给她写了一份购物清单。克莱尔进城去买了窗帘、坐垫和床上用品。然后她去了一家珠宝店买项链。柜台售货员对她很粗鲁，她就打电话给托尼，让售货员同托尼讲话。售货员马上改变了态度。克莱尔对托尼表示感谢，并说他是“可爱的人”。她刚一转过身去，就看到格拉迪斯·克拉芬站在那儿。克莱尔想，被格拉迪斯发现了，这多么难为情啊！从格拉迪斯脸上的那种有趣而又惊奇的神色来看，克莱尔知道，格拉迪斯认为她有风流韵事了。毕竟格拉迪斯知道她的丈夫是拉里，而不是托尼。

克莱尔回到家里，坐在扶手椅上气得直哭。格拉迪斯的一举一动都是克莱尔想模仿的。托尼告诉克莱尔说，你可以同格拉迪斯一样，还建议克莱尔邀请格拉迪斯和她的朋友到家里来玩，时间就定在托尼离去和拉里回家之前的那个晚上。托尼想在此之前将房子改装得焕然一新。

托尼有条不紊地搞着装修。克莱尔有一次想来帮忙，但是太笨手笨脚了，竟从梯子上掉了下来。尽管托尼当时在隔壁房间里，他还是及时赶过来把她接住了。他把她紧紧地搂在怀里，她感觉到了他身上有股暖气。她尖叫了起来，把他推开，跑回她的房里，那天她就再也没有出来过。

聚会的那天晚上来到了。时钟敲响八点，客人马上就要到来了。克莱尔叫托尼到另一间房里去。就在那一瞬间，托尼弯曲胳膊搂着她，弯下身去把脸贴近她的脸。她大叫一声“托尼”，然后听到托尼一本正经地说，明天他不想离开她，而且他并不满足于仅仅使她开心。就在这时，前门的门铃响了。托尼放开了她，消失得无影无踪了。也就在这时，克莱尔才意识到托尼早就把前边窗户的窗帘拉开了。她的客人把这一切看得一清二楚。

克莱尔和他的房子、美食给女士们留下了深刻印象。就在她们离开之前，克莱尔听到格拉迪斯跟另外一个女人小声地说，她从来没有见过像托尼这样英俊的男人。受到那些女士的妒忌，这该是多么甜美的胜利！克莱尔也许并没有她们那样漂亮，但是她们中没有任何一个人拥有这样英俊的情人。

这时候，她记起来了——托尼只不过是一台机器。她高声嚷着：“让我独自呆一会儿！”就跑上床，哭了一个通宵。第二天早晨开来一辆汽车，把托尼接走了。

公司对托尼同克莱尔相处三个星期的实验报告非常满意。托尼保护了一个人免受伤害，他使克莱尔没有因为她的失败感而伤害自己。那天晚上，他拉开了窗帘，让其他女人看到了他和克莱尔在一起，他明白这么做对克莱尔的婚姻并不造成危害。但是，尽管托尼很聪明，他还得作一番改建——总不能让女人和机器相爱吧。

A BIOGRAPHY OF ISAAC ASIMOV 艾萨克·阿西莫夫传

Isaac Asimov was an American scientist and writer who wrote around 480 books that included mystery stories, science and history books, and even books about the Holy Bible and Shakespeare. But he is best known for his science fiction stories. Asimov had both an extraordinary imagination that gave him the ability to explore future worlds and an amazing mind with which he searched for explanations of everything, in the present and the past.

Asimov's life began in Russia, where he was born on 2 January, 1920. It ended in New York on 6 April, 1992, when he died as a result of an HIV infection that he had got from a blood transfusion nine years earlier.

When Asimov was three, he moved with his parents and his one-year-old sister to New

York City. There his parents bought a candy store which they ran for the next 40 or so years. At the age of nine, when his mother was pregnant with her third child, Asimov started working part-time in the store. He helped out through his school and university years until 1942, a year after he had gained a master's degree in chemistry. In 1942 he joined the staff of the Philadelphia Navy Yard as a junior chemist and worked there for three years. In 1948 he got his PhD in chemistry. The next year he became a biochemistry teacher at Boston University School of Medicine. In 1958 he gave up teaching to become a full-time writer.

It was when Asimov was eleven years old that his talent for writing became obvious. He had told a friend two chapters of a story he had written. The friend thought he was retelling a story from a book. This really surprised Asimov and from that moment, he started to take himself seriously as a writer. Asimov began having stories published in science fiction magazines in 1939. In 1950 he published his first novel and in 1953 his first science book.

Throughout his life, Asimov received many awards, both for his science fiction books and his science books. Among his most famous works of science fiction, one for which he won an award was the Foundation trilogy (1951-1953), three novels about the death and rebirth of a great empire in a galaxy of the future. It was loosely based on the fall of the Roman Empire but was about the future. These books are famous because Asimov invented a theoretical framework which was designed to show how ideas and thinking may develop in the future. He is also well known for his collection of short stories, *I, Robot* (1950), in which he developed a set of three "laws" for robots. For example, the first law states that a robot must not injure human beings or allow them to be injured. Some of his ideas about robots later influenced other writers and even scientists researching into artificial intelligence.

Asimov was married twice. He married his first wife in 1942 and had a son and a daughter. Their marriage lasted 31 years. Soon after his divorce in 1973, Asimov married again but he had no children with his second wife.

艾萨克·阿西莫夫是美国的科学家兼作家。他写过大约**480**本书，包括怪诞小说、科学和历史方面的书，甚至还写过有关《圣经》和莎士比亚的书。但是，他最有名的作品还是他的科幻小说。阿西莫夫不仅有着超凡的想象力，使他能对未来世界进行探索，而且还有着惊人的智力，使他能对现在和过去的各种事物作出解释。

阿西莫夫的一生从俄罗斯开始，他生于**1920年1月2日**；阿西莫夫的一生在纽约结束，他死于**1992年4月6日**。他是因为九年前的一次输血中感染了艾滋病毒而去世的。

阿西莫夫三岁的时候，就随同父母和年仅一岁的妹妹迁到纽约。在那儿，他的父母买下了一家糖果店，后来一直经营了大约**40**年。阿西莫夫九岁的时候，母亲怀了第三个孩子，他就开始在糖果店里工作了。他读中学和大学的那段时期都在糖果店里工作，一直到**1942**年，也就是他获得化学硕士学位一年以后他才停止糖果店的工作。**1942**年，他在费城海军造船厂里担任初级化学师，干了三年。**1948**年他获得了化学博士学位。第二年起他在波士顿大学的医学院任生化教员。**1958**年他放弃了教学工作成为专职作家。

早在阿西莫夫十一岁的时候，他的写作才华就已经显露出来了。他把他写的小说中的两个章节念给一个朋友听，那个朋友还以为他是在复述某本书上的故事呢。这使阿西莫夫很惊讶。从此以后，他就开始认真地从事写作了。**1939**年，阿西莫夫开始在科幻杂志上发表故事，**1950**年出版了自己他的第一部小说，**1953**年出版了他的第一部科学书籍。

阿西莫夫一生中多次获过奖，既有科幻小说奖，也有科学书籍奖。在他那些最负盛名的

科幻小说中，有本获奖的书叫做《基地》三部曲（1951-1953），有三个小故事，讲的是未来银河系中一个伟大帝国的灭亡与复兴。基本素材取自罗马帝国的衰败，但讲的是有关未来的事情。这些书之所以有名，是因为阿西莫夫创造了一种理论框架，用以阐述各种想法在未来可能会如何发展。他的短篇小说集《我，机器人》（1950）也是享有盛名的。在这本书里他提出机器人的三大“原则”。举例来说，第一条原则就规定机器人不得伤害人类，也不能允许人类受到伤害。他那些有关机器人的想法后来影响了其他的作者，甚至影响了那些从事人工智能研究的科学家们。

阿西莫夫结过两次婚，他于1942年同他的第一任妻子结婚，生有一男一女。这次婚姻持续了31年。1973年离婚后不久，阿西莫夫又结婚了，但是他与第二任妻子没有生育儿女。

选修 7 Unit 3 Under the sea - Reading

OLD TOM THE KILLER WHALE 虎鲸老汤姆

I was 16 when I began work in June 1902 at the whaling station. I had heard of the killers that every year helped whalers catch huge whales. I thought, at the time, that this was just a story but then I witnessed it with my own eyes many times.

On the afternoon I arrived at the station, as I was sorting out my accommodation, I heard a loud noise coming from the bay. We ran down to the shore in time to see an enormous animal opposite us throwing itself out of the water and then crashing down again. It was black and white and fish-shaped. But I knew it wasn't a fish.

"That's Old Tom, the killer," one of the whalers, George, called out to me. "He's telling us there's a whale out there for us."

Another whaler yelled out, "Rush-oo ...rush-oo." This was the call that announced there was about to be a whale hunt.

"Come on, Clancy. To the boat," George said as he ran ahead of me. I had already heard that George didn't like being kept waiting, so even though I didn't have the right clothes on, I raced after him.

Without pausing we jumped into the boat with the other whalers and headed out into the bay. I looked down into the water and could see Old Tom swimming by the boat, showing us the way. A few minutes later, there was no Tom, so George started beating the water with his oar and there was Tom, circling back to the boat, leading us to the hunt again.

Using a telescope we could see that something was happening. As we drew closer, I could see a whale being attacked by a pack of about six other killers.

"What're they doing?" I asked George.

"Well, it's teamwork - the killers over there are throwing themselves on top of the whale's blow-hole to stop it breathing. And those others are stopping it diving or fleeing out to sea," George told me, pointing towards the hunt. And just at that moment, the most extraordinary thing happened. The killers started racing between our boat and the whale just like a pack of excited dogs.

Then the harpoon was ready and the man in the bow of the boat aimed it at the whale. He let it go and the harpoon hit the spot. Being badly wounded, the whale soon died. Within a moment or two, its body was dragged swiftly by the killers down into the depths of the sea. The

men started turning the boat around to go home.

"What's happened?" I asked. "Have we lost the whale?"

"Oh no," Jack replied. "We'll return tomorrow to bring in the body. It won't float up to the surface for around 24 hours." "In the meantime, Old Tom, and the others are having a good feed on its lips and tongue," added Red, laughing.

Although Old Tom and the other killers were fierce hunters, they, never harmed or attacked people. In fact, they protected them. There was one day when we were out in the bay during a hunt and James was washed off the boat.

"Man overboard! Turn the boat around!" urged George, shouting loudly.

The sea was rough that day and it was difficult to handle the boat. The waves were carrying James further and further away from us. From James's face, I could see he was terrified of being abandoned by us. Then suddenly I saw a shark.

"Look, there's a shark out there," I screamed.

"Don't worry, Old Tom won't let it near," Red replied.

It took over half an hour to get the boat back to James, and when we approached him, I saw James being firmly held up in the water by Old Tom. I couldn't believe my eyes.

There were shouts of "Well done, Old Tom" and "Thank God" as we pulled James back into the boat. And then Old Tom was off and back to the hunt where the other killers were still attacking the whale.

1902年6月, 我开始在捕鲸站里工作, 那时我才16岁。在此之前我曾经听说过虎鲸每年帮助捕鲸人捕捉大鲸鱼。当时我以为只是一个故事罢了, 但是后来我亲眼见过多次。

有天下午我来到捕鲸站, 正在找住处的时候, 听到从海湾那边传来一阵喧闹声。我们及时赶到岸边, 看到对面有一个庞大的动物猛力跃出海面, 然后又坠落到水里。它黑白相间, 样子像鱼, 但我知道它并不是鱼。

“那是老汤姆, 是虎鲸。”一位叫乔治的捕鲸人高声对我说, “它是在告诉我们那边有一头鲸, 叫我们去捕猎。”

另一位捕鲸人大声喊叫, “快走啊.....走啊。”这是宣告猎鲸行动马上就要开始的呼声。

“克兰西, 快上, 上船去。”乔治在我前面边跑边说。我以前就听说过, 乔治不喜欢等人。所以尽管我还没有穿上合适的衣服, 就跟在他后面跑起来。

一刻不停地, 我们和其他捕鲸人都跳进渔船, 朝海湾方向驶去。我朝水里望去, 可以看到老汤姆就在渔船旁边游着, 为我们指路。几分钟之后, 汤姆不见了, 于是乔治开始用桨拍打水面。汤姆出现了, 转回到船边, 又领着我们前往捕猎处。

通过望远镜, 我们可以看到远处有情况发生了。走近一看, 原来是一头大鲸受到约六、七条虎鲸的攻击。

我问乔治, “它们在干什么呢?”

“啊, 它们在协同作战呢——那些虎鲸正在往那头鲸的出气孔上扑去, 不让它呼吸, 而其他那些虎鲸则阻止它潜水或逃跑。”乔治一边指着捕猎的情景, 一边告诉我。就在这时候, 最精彩的场面出现了。虎鲸们在我们的渔船和那头鲸之间开始追逐了, 就像一群发狂的猎狗一样。

于是, 猎鲸又准备好了。站在船头的那个人把叉瞄准了那头鲸, 扔了出去, 恰好击中了要害, 鲸受了重伤, 没过多久就死了。过了片刻, 鲸的尸体就要被虎鲸们迅速拖向深海中去了。捕鲸人于是调转船头往回走。

“怎么啦?”我问道, “我们失去鲸了吗?”

杰克回答说：“不，我们明天再回来运鲸鱼的尸体。它在24小时以内是不会浮出水面的。”

瑞德笑着补充说：“在这段时间里，老汤姆和其他虎鲸会饱餐一顿的，鲸唇和鲸舌就是它们的美食”。

虽然老汤姆和其他虎鲸都凶恶，但是它们从来不伤害人，也不袭击人。事实上，它们还会保护人。有一天，我们出海捕鲸的时候，詹姆斯被冲下水去了。

乔治大声喊道：“有人落水了！把船头调回去！”

那天海上波涛汹涌，很难调转船头。海浪把詹姆斯冲得离我们越来越远。从詹姆斯的脸上我能看出他非常恐慌，生怕被我们遗弃。随后我们看到一条鲨鱼。

我尖叫起来，“瞧，那边有一条鲨鱼。”

瑞德回答说：“别着急，老汤姆不会让它靠近的。”

我们花了半个小时才把船调转头来，回到詹姆斯落水的地方。当我们靠近他的时候，我看到老汤姆正在水中稳稳托着詹姆斯，我几乎不相信自己的眼睛。

当我们把詹姆斯拉上渔船的时候，大家都欢呼着“老汤姆，好样的”，“感谢上帝”。后来，老汤姆离开了，回到捕猎的地方，跟其他虎鲸一起捕鲸去了。

A NEW DIMENSION OF LIFE 崭新的生活空间

19th January

I'm sitting in the warm night air with a cold drink in my hand and reflecting on the day – a day of pure magic! I went snorkelling on the reef offshore this morning and it was the most fantastic thing I have ever done. Seeing such extraordinary beauty, I think every cell in my body woke up. It was like discovering a whole new dimension of life.

The first thing I became aware of was all the vivid colours surrounding me - purples, reds, oranges, yellows, blues and greens. The corals were fantastic - they were shaped like fans, plates, brains, lace, mushrooms, the branches of trees and the horns of deer. And all kinds of small, neat and elegant fish were swimming in and around the corals.

The fish didn't seem to mind me swimming among them. I especially loved the little orange and white fish that hid in the waving long thin seaweed. And I also loved the small fish that clean the bodies of larger fish - I even saw them get inside their mouths and clean their teeth! It seemed there was a surprise waiting for me around every corner as I explored small caves, shelves and narrow passages with my underwater flashlight: the yellow and green parrotfish was hanging upside down, and sucking tiny plants off the coral with its hard bird-like mouth; a yellow-spotted red sea-slug was sliding by a blue sea-star; a large wise-looking turtle was passing so close to me that I could have touched it.

There were other creatures that I didn't want to get too close to - an eel with its strong sharp teeth, with only its head showing from a hole, watching for a tasty fish (or my tasty toe!); and the giant clam half buried in some coral waiting for something to swim in between its thick green lips. Then there were two grey reef sharks, each about one and a half metres long, which suddenly appeared from behind some coral. I told myself they weren't dangerous but that didn't stop me from feeling scared to death for a moment!

The water was quite shallow but where the reef ended, there was a steep drop to the sandy ocean floor. It marked a boundary and I thought I was very brave when I swam over the edge of the reef and hung there looking down into the depths of the ocean. My heart was beating wildly - I felt very exposed in such deep clear water.

What a wonderful, limitless world it was down there! And what a tiny spot I was in this enormous world!

1月19日

我坐在温暖的夜空下，手里拿着一瓶冷饮，回忆着当天的事情——这是神奇的一天！这天上午，我戴着呼吸器在近海的珊瑚礁上潜泳，这是我从来没有过的绝妙经历。看到这样奇特的美景，我周身的每个细胞都苏醒了，就像发现了一个全新的生活空间似的。

我首先注意到的是我周围那些鲜艳的色彩——紫色、红色、橘黄、明黄、蓝色和绿色。那些珊瑚都是稀奇古怪的——有的形状像扇子、盘子、脑袋和彩条，有的像香菇、树枝和鹿角。还有种类繁多、小巧整齐、姿态优雅的鱼穿行在珊瑚丛中，或环游于珊瑚的四周。

我在那些鱼群中游泳，他们似乎并不在乎。我特别喜欢那些橘黄和白色相间的小鱼，他们藏在波动着的细长的海藻里。我也喜欢那些为大鱼清洁身体的小鱼——我甚至还看到这些小鱼游进大鱼的嘴里去帮他们刷牙。当我用水下探明灯探索小石洞、岩石和狭窄通道的时候，似乎每个角落都有使我感到惊奇的东西等着我：黄绿相间的鹦嘴鱼倒挂着，用它那像鸟一样的硬嘴从珊瑚上吸吮微小植物；带着黄斑点的红色海蛞蝓从一个蓝色的海星旁边滑行过去；一只长相聪慧的大乌龟紧贴着我的身旁而过，我几乎可以摸到它了。

还有一些其他动物，我不想太靠近他们——一条带有利齿的鳗鱼，只是把头从石洞里伸出来，望着可供美餐的鱼过来（或者在等着我的美味脚趾伸过去）；一个巨大的蛤蜊半掩在珊瑚礁中等着有什么东西游过来，游到它那宽厚的绿嘴唇中。然后，还有两条灰色的珊瑚鲨，每条大约有1.5米长，突然从珊瑚后边游了出来。我自言自语地说它们并不危险，但是我这样说一点也不能抑制我那怕得要死的心情。

海水是浅的，但是到了珊瑚礁的尽头，就有一个陡坡，一直下降到满是沙子的海底。它是边界的标志。我游过珊瑚礁的边沿，浮在上面往下看海底的时候，我认为我还是非常勇敢的。我的心急剧地跳动着——在这样深邃而清澈的海水中，我感觉我是彻底地曝光了。

这个水底世界是多么美妙，多么漫无边际！而我在这个海洋的世界中又是多么渺小！

选修 7 Unit 4 Sharing- Reading

A LETTER HOME 一封家书

Dear Rosemary,

Thanks for your letter, which took a fortnight to arrive. It was wonderful to hear from you. I know you're dying to hear all about my life here, so I've included some photos which will help you picture the places I talk about.

You asked about my high school. Well, it's a bush school – the classrooms are made of bamboo and the roofs of grass. It takes me only a few minutes to walk to school down a muddy

track. When I reach the school grounds there are lots of "good mornings" for me from the boys. Many of them have walked a long way, sometimes up to two hours, to get to school.

There's no electricity or water and even no textbooks either! I'm still trying to adapt to these conditions. However, one thing is for sure, I've become more imaginative in my teaching. Science is my most challenging subject as my students have no concept of doing experiments. In fact there is no equipment, and if I need water I have to carry it from my house in a bucket! The other day I was showing the boys the weekly chemistry experiment when, before I knew it, the mixture was bubbling over everywhere! The boys who had never come across anything like this before started jumping out of the windows. Sometimes I wonder how relevant chemistry is to these students, most of whom will be going back to their villages after Year 8 anyway. To be honest, I doubt whether I'm making any difference to these boys' lives at all.

You asked whether I'm getting to know any local people. Well, that's actually quite difficult as I don't speak much of the local English dialect yet. But last weekend another teacher, Jenny, and I did visit a village which is the home of one of the boys, Tombe. It was my first visit to a remote village. We walked for two and a half hours to get there - first up a mountain to a ridge from where we had fantastic views and then down a steep path to the valley below. When we arrived at the village, Tombe's mother, Kiak, who had been pulling weeds in her garden, started crying "ieeee ieeee". We shook hands with all the villagers. Everyone seemed to be a relative of Tombe's.

Tombe's father, Mukap, led us to his house, a low bamboo hut with grass sticking out of the roof - this shows it is a man's house. The huts were round, not rectangular like the school buildings.

There were no windows and the doorway was just big enough to get through. The hut was dark inside so it took time for our eyes to adjust. Fresh grass had been laid on the floor and there was a newly made platform for Jenny and me to sleep on. Usually Kiak would sleep in her own hut, but that night she was going to share the platform with us. Mukap and Tombe were to sleep on small beds in another part of the hut. There was a fireplace in the centre of the hut near the doorway. The only possessions I could see were one broom, a few tin plates and cups and a couple of jars.

Outside Mukap was building a fire. Once the fire was going, he laid stones on it. When hot, he placed them in an empty oil drum with kau kau (sweet potato), corn and greens. He then covered the vegetables with banana leaves and left them to steam. I sniffed the food; it smelled delicious. We ate inside the hut sitting round the fire. I loved listening to the family softly talking to each other in their language, even though I could not participate the conversation. Luckily, Tombe could be our interpreter.

Later, I noticed a tin can standing upside down on the grill over the fire. After a short time Tombe threw it out of the doorway. I was puzzled. Tombe told me that the can was heated to dry out the leftover food. They believe that any leftovers attract evil spirits in the night, so the food is dried up in the can and the can is then thrown out of the hut. Otherwise they don't waste

anything.

We left the village the next morning after many goodbyes and firm handshakes. My muscles were aching and my knees shaking as we climbed down the mountain towards home. That evening I fell happily into bed. It was such a privilege to have spent a day with Tombe's family.

It's getting late and I have to prepare tomorrow's lessons and do some paperwork. Please write soon.

Love

Jo

亲爱的罗斯玛丽：

谢谢你的来信，这封信两星期才到。收到你的信真是太高兴了。我知道你急于了解我在这儿的生活情况。因此，我在信中附有几张照片，能够帮助你想象出我所谈到的地方。

你问起我中学的情况。噢，它是一所丛林学校——教室是用竹子搭起来的，屋顶是用茅草盖的。我只要沿着一条泥泞的小路步行几分钟就到学校了。每当我走到学校操场的时候，迎接我的是男孩子们一片“早上好”的声音。他们中许多人走了很长的路，有时候要走两个小时才能到学校。

这里没有电，也没有水，甚至连课本也没有！我还在努力适应这儿的生活条件。但是有一点是肯定的，我在教学中变得更富有想象力了。理科对我来说是最富挑战性的课，因为我的学生对做实验没有概念。实际上，根本没有设备。如果需要水，我还得从家里用水桶提过来！有一天，我正给孩子们做每周一次的化学实验的演示，我还没有明白怎么回事，混合剂就到处冒气泡了！男孩子们以前从来没有见过这种情况，吓得都往窗外跳去。有时候，我真想知道，化学对这些孩子究竟有多大的用处。他们中的大多数人学完八年级以后就要回到他们的村庄去了。说实在的，我真的不知道我教的课是否会让这些孩子的生活有所改变。

你问我是否了解当地的老百姓。哦，这实在是太难了，因为我还说不了几句当地人说的英语。不过，上周末我和另外一位叫詹妮的教师真的去访问了一个村庄，那是其中一名男孩汤贝的家的所在地。这是我第一次到偏僻的村子里去。我们步行了两个半小时才到达那里——先是爬山，爬到山脊能看到奇妙的景色，然后下一个陡坡，一直走到下面的山谷。当我们到村庄的时候，汤贝的母亲齐亚克本来在园子里拔草，看到我们就“噢，噢”地叫了起来。我们同所有的村民都握了手。每个人看上去都是汤贝家的亲戚。

汤贝的父亲叫莫卡普，他把我们带到他的家里。这是一个低矮的竹屋，屋顶上伸出一簇茅草——它代表这间竹屋是男人住的。屋子是圆的，不像学校那样是长方形的。这里没有窗户，房门只够一个人进出。小屋内很黑，因此眼睛要过好一阵子才能适应过来。地上摆放着一堆新鲜的草，还新做了一个平台，是供詹妮和我睡觉用的。通常齐亚克是睡在她自己的小屋里的，而那天晚上她要同我们一起睡在平台上。莫卡普和汤贝则睡在竹屋另一边的小床上。在竹屋中间靠近房门的地方有一个火炉。我所看到的仅有的家具是一把扫帚，几个锡盘和锡杯，还有两个罐子。

莫卡普在屋子外边生火。火着起来后，他往火里扔了几块石头。烧热以后，他把石头放在一个空油桶里，加上一些考考（红薯）、玉米和青菜，然后用香蕉叶把这些蔬菜盖上，等着它们蒸熟。我用鼻子嗅，食物闻起来很香。我们在房里围着火炉坐下来吃东西。他们家里人轻声细语地用自己的语言在交谈。我很喜欢听他们谈话，尽管我不能加入他们的谈话。幸好，汤贝能给我们当翻译。

后来，我发现有一个锡罐子倒放在火炉的烤架上。过了一会儿，汤贝把它从门道里扔了

出去。我不懂为什么这么做。汤贝告诉我说，罐子加热是为了把里面的残菜剩饭烧干。他们相信剩饭在夜晚会引来邪灵，所以要把食物放在罐子里烧干，再把罐子一起扔到屋外去。否则的话，他们是不会浪费任何东西的。

第二天早晨，经过一番紧紧握手和道别之后，我们就离开了村庄。我们爬下山回家，往回走的时候，我的腿部肌肉发痛，膝盖发抖。那天晚上我很开心，倒在床上就睡了。跟汤贝一家度过了一天，真是一种殊荣。

天色很晚了，我还得准备明天的功课呢。请早日来信。

爱你的，乔

THE WORLD'S MOST USEFUL GIFT CATALOGUE 世上最有用的礼物清单

Would you like to donate an unusual gift? Then this is the catalogue for you. The gift you give is not something your loved one keeps but a voluntary contribution towards the lives of people who really need it. Choose from this catalogue a really useful gift for some of the world's poorest and bring hope for a better future to a community in need.

When you purchase an item, we will send you an attractive card for you to send to your special person. You can use the cards for any special occasion-weddings ,births, birthdays,Christmas or anniversaries, etc.

To.....

To let you know that I am thinking of you, I have purchased a gift from the World's Most Useful Gift Catalogue for you to give to some of the world's poorest.

This gift will train a whole village of around 40 families in India, Kenya, or Bangladesh in new agricultural methods, and provide seeds and simple agricultural equipment. Just 20% more produce will mean the difference between sickness and health, between families going hungry and families providing for themselves.

From.....

首页

关于我们

礼物订单

联系方式

你是否想要赠送一份特殊的礼物？那么下面这份礼单供你参考吧。你送的礼物不是给你所爱的人留念的，而是给那些确有需要的人的一项生活上的无偿捐助。

从这份清单中选择一份确实有用的礼物，送给世界上最穷苦的人吧。给急需帮助的社区带去一份改善未来的希望吧。

你选购一项礼物时，我们都会给你提供一张精美的卡片，然后给你送给你的某个特殊的人。这种卡片可以用在任何一种特殊的场合——结婚、出生、生日、圣诞节、周年纪念等。

礼物

A 20株树苗 B 组建妇女自助会的贷款 C 一个人的用水 D 蔬菜园艺培训 E 预防六种儿童致命疾病的疫苗 F 学校用书 G 成人基础教育 H 基本保健服务 I 小学一年的学费 J 资助困难户一头羊 K 家用厨具 L 一个家庭的用水

价值（澳元）

5 8 10 15 20 20 25 30 35 40 50 65

M 建一家小型企业的贷款 N 一台缝纫机 O 家用营养补品 P 耕牛 Q 箱式图书馆

85 100 130 180 200

R 对遗孤家庭的扶助金 S 社区小学经费 T 村庄拖拉机 U 水井和水泵

300 500 1000 1350

致_____

为了让你知道我在想着你们，特从“世界上最有用的礼物清单”中购得一份礼物，请你转送给世界上最穷苦的人。

这份礼物给印度、肯尼亚或孟加拉国约40户人口的村庄，给他们进行新的农业生产方法的培训，并提供种子和简单的农业机械。仅仅提高20%的产量就意味着会对人的患病与健康、家庭饥饿与自足产生影响。

来自_____

选修 7 Unit 5 Travelling abroad- Reading

KEEP IT UP,XIE LEI

CHINESE STUDENT FITTING WELL 谢蕾，再接再厉中国学生适应能力强

Six months ago Xie Lei said goodbye to her family and friends in China and boarded a plane for London. It was the first time she had ever left her motherland. "After getting my visa I was very excited because I had dreamed of this day for so long. But I was also very nervous as I didn't know what to expect," Xie Lei told me when I saw her waiting in a queue at the student cafeteria between lectures.

Xie Lei, who is 21 years old, has come to our university to study for a business qualification. She is halfway through the preparation year, which most foreign students complete before applying for a degree course. Xie Lei highly recommends it. "The preparation course is most beneficial," she said. "Studying here is quite different from studying in China, so you need some preparation first."

"It's not just study that's difficult. You have to get used to a whole new way of life, which can take up all your concentration in the beginning," explained Xie Lei, who had lived all her life in the same city in China. She told me that she had had to learn almost everything again. "Sometimes I felt like a child," she said. "I had to learn how to use the phone, how to pay bus fare, and how to ask a shopkeeper for things I didn't know the English for. When I got lost and had to ask a passer-by for directions, I didn't always understand. They don't talk like they do on our listening tapes," she said, laughing.

Xie Lei lives with a host family who give her lots of good advice. Although some foreign

students live in student accommodation or apartments, some choose to board with English families. Living with host families, in which there may be other college students, gives her the chance to learn more about the new culture. "When I hear an idiom that I don't understand, I can ask my host family for help," explains Xie Lei. "Also, when I miss my family, it's a great comfort to have a substitute family to be with."

Xie Lei's preparation course is helping her to get used to the academic requirements of a Western university. "I remember the first essay I did for my tutor," she told me. "I found an article on the Internet that seemed to have exactly the information I needed. So I made a summary of the article, revised my draft and handed the essay in. I thought I would get a really good mark but I got an E. I was numb with shock! So I went to my tutor to ask the reason for his revision. First of all, he told me, I couldn't write what other people had said without acknowledging them. Besides, as far as he was concerned, what other people thought was not the most important thing. He wanted to know what I thought, which confused me because I thought that the author of the article knew far more than I did. My tutor explained that I should read lots of different texts that contain different opinions and analyse what I read. Then, in my essay, I should give my own opinion and explain it by referring to other authors. Finally he even encouraged me to contradict the authors I'd read! At first I lacked confidence, but now I'm beginning to get the idea and my marks have improved. More importantly, I am now a more autonomous learner."

Xie Lei told me that she feels much more at home in England now, and what had seemed very strange before now appears quite normal. "I've just got one more thing to achieve. I have been so occupied with work that I haven't had time for social activities. I think it's important to have a balance between study and a social life, so I'm going to join a few clubs. Hope- fully I'll make some new friends."

We will follow Xie Lei's progress in later editions of this newspaper but for now, we wish Xie Lei all the best in her new enterprise. She deserves to succeed.

六个月前，谢蕾告别了她在中国的家人和朋友，登上了前往伦敦的飞机。这是她第一次离开自己的祖国。课间休息时我在[学生餐厅](#)碰到正排队的谢蕾，她告诉我说：“拿到签证后我很激动，因为我很久以前就梦想着能有这么一天，但是我又非常紧张，因为我不知道我所期望的是什么。”

谢蕾今年21岁，来我们大学上学，希望获得[工商管理资格证书](#)。大多数外籍学生在申请[学位课程](#)之前都要学习一年[预科](#)，而谢蕾已经读完半年了。她非常看重预科课程。她说：“预科课程非常有益。在这儿学习跟在中国学习是相当不同的。你必须事前做些准备。”

“困难不仅仅只在学习方面，你还必须习惯一种全新的生活方式，在一开始的时候这就会占去你的全部精力，”谢蕾解释说。她在中国时一直居住在同一座城市。她还告诉我，几乎每件事她都得重新学习。她说：“有时候我觉得自己像个小孩似的，我得学习如何使用电话，乘公交车时该怎样付款，在商店买东西时如果不知道商品的[英文名字](#)时，又怎样问店主。当我迷路不得不向过路人问路时，经常听不懂他们说的话。他们说的话不像我们在听力磁带上听到的那样，”谢蕾说着笑了。

谢蕾同房东一家人住在一起，他们给了她许多建议。虽然有些外国学生住在学生宿舍或公寓房里，但是有些学生选择寄宿在[英国人](#)的家中。有的房东家也许会住着其他大学生，跟这样的人家住在一起会给她提供机会，更好地了解新的文化。“当我听到我不理解的成语时，我可以向房东家里的人请教，”谢蕾解释说。“还有，当我想家的时候，房东家就是我家的替身，

和他们在一起给了我很大的安慰。”

谢蕾的预科课程帮助她熟悉了西方大学里的学术方面的要求。她对我说：“我还记得我交给导师的第一篇论文。我在网上找到一篇文章，看来跟我所需要的信息恰好一样。于是我就那篇论文写了一篇小结性的文章，修改了草稿，然后交给了导师。我原以为我会得到高分的，结果只得了一个 E。我非常吃惊！于是去找导师理论，想换个分数。他告诉我说，首先，我不能把别人的话写下来而不表示感谢。此外，他认为，别人的想法并不是最重要的。他想要知道的是我所想的是什么。这倒把我弄糊涂了，因为我认为该文作者所知道的比我多得多。导师给我解释说，我得阅读大量的、有关不同观点的文章，并进行分析。然后，在我的论文中，我得表明我自己的观点，并且引用别的作者的观点来说明为什么我相信我的观点。最后，他甚至鼓励我反驳我读过的那些作者的观点！起初，我缺乏信心，而现在我开始懂得了，并且我的分数也已经有所提高了。更重要的是，我现在是一个自主学习者。”

谢蕾告诉我说，现在她在英国感到自在多了。以前看似很奇怪的事，如今觉得似乎很正常了。“我还有一件事要做，我一直忙于学习，以至于没有时间参与社会活动。我认为在学习与社会生活之间的平衡也是很重要的，所以我打算参加几个俱乐部，我希望会结识一些新朋友。”

关于谢蕾的进步，我们将在今后几期报纸中做跟踪报道。同时我们衷心祝愿她学业有成。她是应该取得成功的。

PERU 秘鲁

Peru offers a variety of experiences from ancient ruins and centuries-old Spanish villages to thick forests, high mountains and desert coastline. TRAVEL PERU offers tours for all ages and tastes. The following tours are based at Cuzco, the site of the ancient capital of the Inca civilization.

Tour 1

Experience the jungle and its diverse wildlife close up. During this four-day walking tour, you will be amazed by mountain scenery and the ancient ruins we pass on our hike. On the last day, we arrive at the ruins of Machu Picchu in time to see the sunrise over the Andes. Spend the day visiting the ruins of this ancient Inca city before catching the train back to Cuzco.

Tour 2

A full-day trip by road from Cuzco to Puno with fantastic views of the highland countryside. From Puno, we travel by boat across Lake Titicaca, stopping on the way at the floating islands of the Uros people. These floating islands and the Uros Indian's houses are made of the water plants that grow in the lake. A full-day stay with a local family gives you an opportunity to learn more about their life. Return to Puno on the fourth day for your flight back to Lima.

Tour 3

Spend four days high in the-Andes at Cuzco. Learn about its history and visit the museums. Admire the Spanish architecture, enjoy some excellent Spanish cuisine and take some time to bargain for some souvenirs at the colourful markets. Take the train up to Machu Picchu for a guided tour of the ruins and the royal tomb of the Inca king.

Tour 4

A short flight from Cuzco takes you from the Andes into the lowlands of the Amazon Jungle. From here you'll travel by boat to your accommodation in a forest reserve, which holds the record for the most bird sightings in one area. From the guesthouse you can explore the jungle in the company of a local guide.

秘鲁是南美洲临太平洋海岸的一个国家。从地理上讲，秘鲁有三大地区：狭长的临海地带，与海岸平行的安第斯山脉以及东南部地势较高的平原地区。在高原地区有的的喀喀湖，这是世界上海拔最高的湖，湖上可以行船。秘鲁有着多种多样的植物，从沙漠中的草原到大片的丛林。秘鲁曾经是强盛而极为赋予的印加帝国的中心，从16世纪起，南美洲许多地区都是由西班牙统治的。秘鲁最终于1821年脱离西班牙而独立。秘鲁的首都是利马，位于北部的临海地区。人们发现古印加帝国的首都库斯科位于安第斯的高山之上。这儿是旅游的热点，因为它离马丘比丘城著名的印加遗址近。库斯科有许多旅店和酒吧，是一座富有活力的城市，在那儿你可以看到印第安和西班牙的文化艺术。1. 为什么库斯科是旅游人士喜欢去的地方？2. 的喀喀湖有什么特色？3. 你认为秘鲁有哪两种官方语言？

PERU 秘鲁

秘鲁提供丰富的旅游资源，从古代的遗址、具有数百年历史的西班牙式的村庄，到茂密的森林、高山和临海的沙漠。“秘鲁之旅”为各种年龄和品位的人提供旅游服务。下列旅游项目都是从库斯科出发，库斯科是印加文化的古都所在地。

旅游路线1 体验丛林，近距离观赏各种类繁多的野生生物。在四天的徒步旅行中，山区的风景和步行途经的古代遗址将会令你叹为观止。最后一天到达马丘比丘遗址，正好赶得上安第斯山上观看日出。白天参观古印加城的遗址，然后乘火车返回库斯科。

旅游路线2 全日乘车旅游，从库斯科到普诺，观赏高原乡村的秀丽景色。再从普诺乘船穿过的喀喀湖，半途停歇在乌罗族人的浮岛上。这些浮岛和乌罗印第安人的房子都是用湖水的水草做成的。有一整天的时间待在当地居民的家里，这样你会有机会更多地了解他们的生活。第四天返回普诺，再乘飞机返回利马。

旅游路线3 在库斯科的安第斯高山上玩四天，了解它的历史，参观博物馆。观赏西班牙式的建筑，品尝西班牙美味，好好逛逛五颜六色的市场，花些时间讨价还价买点纪念品。乘火车去马丘比丘，由导游陪同去参观遗址和印加国王的皇家墓地。

旅游路线4 从库斯科乘飞机作短途飞行，从安第斯山到亚马孙河丛林的低地。从这里可以乘船到森林保护区的接待站。这个护林区保持着一项观鸟记录，即在一个地区可以看到最多的鸟类。你还可以在当地导游的陪同下，从接待站出发去丛林探险。

选修 8 Unit 1 A land of diversity-Reading 一个多元文化的国家

CALIFORNIA 加州

California is the third largest state in the USA but has the largest population. It also has the distinction of being the most multicultural state in the USA, having attracted people from all over the world. The customs and languages of the immigrants live on in their new home. This diversity of culture is not surprising when you know the history of California.

NATIVE AMERICANS

Exactly when the first people arrived in what we now know as California, no one really knows. However, it is likely that Native Americans were living in California at least fifteen thousand years ago. Scientists believe that these settlers crossed the Bering Strait in the Arctic to America by means of a land bridge which existed in prehistoric times. In the 16th century, after the arrival of the Europeans, the native people suffered greatly. Thousands were killed or forced into slavery. In addition, many died from the diseases brought by the Europeans. However, some survived these terrible times, and today there are more Native Americans living in California than in any other state.

THE SPANISH

In the 18th century California was ruled by Spain. Spanish soldiers first arrived in South America in the early 16th century, when they fought against the native people and took their land. Two centuries later, the Spanish had settled in most parts of South America and along the northwest coast of what we now call the United States. Of the first Spanish to go to California, the majority were religious men, whose ministry was to teach the Catholic religion to the natives. In 1821, the people of Mexico gained their independence from Spain. California then became part of Mexico. In 1846 the United States declared war on Mexico, and after the war won by the USA, Mexico had to give California to the USA. However, there is still a strong Spanish influence in the state. That is why today over 40 of Californians speak Spanish as a first or second language.

RUSSIANS

In the early 1800s, Russian hunters, who had originally gone to Alaska, began settling in California. Today there are about 25,000 Russian-Americans living in and around San Francisco.

GOLD MINERS

In 1848, not long after the American-Mexican war, gold was discovered in California. The dream of becoming rich quickly attracted people from all over the world. The nearest, and therefore the first to arrive, were South Americans and people from the United States. Then adventurers from Europe and Asia soon followed. In fact, few achieved their dream of becoming rich. Some died or returned home, but most remained in California to make a life for themselves despite great hardship. They settled in the new towns or on farms. By the time California elected to become the thirty-first federal state of the USA in 1850, it was already a multicultural society.

LATER ARRIVALS

Although Chinese immigrants began to arrive during the Gold Rush Period, it was the building of the rail network from the west to the east coast that brought even larger numbers to California in the 1860s. Today, Chinese-Americans live in all parts of California, although a large percentage have chosen to stay in the "Chinatowns" of Los Angeles and San Francisco.

Other immigrants such as Italians, mainly fishermen but also wine makers, arrived in California in the late 19th century. In 1911 immigrants from Denmark established a town of their own, which today still keeps up their Danish culture. By the 1920s the film industry was well established in Hollywood, California. The industry boom attracted Europeans including many Jewish people. Today California has the second largest Jewish population in the United States.

Japanese farmers began arriving in California at the beginning of the 20th century, and since the 1980s a lot more have settled there. People from Africa have been living in California since the 1800s, when they moved north from Mexico. However, even more arrived between 1942 and 1945

to work in the ship and aircraft industries.

MOST RECENT ARRIVALS

In more recent decades, California has become home to more people from Asia, including Koreans, Cambodians, Vietnamese and Laotians. Since its beginning in the 1970s, the computer industry has attracted Indians and Pakistanis to California.

THE FUTURE

People from different parts of the world, attracted by the climate and the lifestyle, still immigrate to California. It is believed that before long the mix of nationalities will be so great that there will be no distinct major racial or cultural groups, but simply a mixture of many races and cultures.

加州是美国的第三大州，而且是人口最多的州。加州与众不同之处在于它也是美国最具多元文化的一个州，它吸引了来自世界各地的人们。这些移民的风俗习惯以及语言在他们的新家都得以延续。当你了解了加州的历史后，你就不会对此感到惊讶了。

美洲土著人

最早的一批人具体是在什么时候来到我们现在所知道的加州地区的，谁也说不清楚。然而，很可能至少在 15,000 年以前美洲土著人就住在加州了。科学家们认为，这些迁居者通过一条史前时代曾经存在的大陆桥穿越北极地区的白令海峡到达美洲。欧洲人在 16 世纪来到这儿后，土著人遭受了极大的苦难，成千上万的人被杀害或被迫成为奴隶。此外，欧洲人带来了疾病，使许多人染病而死，不过，还是有一些人在经历了这些恐怖时期后活下来了。今天住在加州的美洲土著人比任何其他州的都要多。

西班牙人

在 18 世纪的时候，加州是由西班牙统治的西班牙士兵最早是在 16 世纪初期来到南美洲的，他们同土著人打仗，并夺去了他们的土地。两个世纪以后，西班牙人在南美洲的大部分地区定居下来，而且还在我们现在称之为美国的西北沿海地区住下来。在首批移居加州的西班牙人中，大部分是宗教人士，他们的职责是向原住民传授天主教。1821 年，墨西哥人从西班牙获得了独立-加州于是成了墨西哥的一部分。1846 年美国向墨西哥宣战，美国赢得战争胜利后，墨西哥被迫把加州割让给美国。但是，这个州至今仍然保留着很强的西班牙的影响。这就是为什么今天还有 40% 的加州人仍然把西班牙语作为第一或第二语言的缘故。

俄罗斯人

19 世纪初期，一批最初到阿拉斯加的俄罗斯猎人开始在加州定居下来。今天，住在圣弗朗西斯科（旧金山）及其周边地区的美籍俄罗斯人约有 25,000 人。

淘金矿工

1848 年，在美国同墨西哥开战之后不久，在加州发现了金矿。发财梦很快就吸引了世界各地的人。距离最近因而来得最早的是南美洲人和美国人。随后跟着来的有欧洲和亚洲的探险家。事实上很少有人圆了发财梦。一些人死了或回家了，但是尽管条件十分艰苦，多数人还是留在了加州劳作谋生，并在新的城镇或农场里定居下来。到 1850 年加州成为美国第 31 个州的时候，它已经是一个有着多种文化的社会了。

后来的移民

虽然中国移民在淘金热时期就开始到来了，但是更大批量的移民却是在 19 世纪 60 年代为了修建贯穿美国东西海岸的铁路而来的。今天，加州州各地都有美籍华人，尽管有很大比例的华人还是选择住在洛杉矶和圣弗朗西斯科（旧金山）的“中国城”里。

19 世纪后期，其他国家的移民，比如意大利人来到了加州，他们主要是渔民，也有制酒工人。1911 年，丹麦的移民建立了自己的城镇，至今仍然保留着丹麦文化。20 世纪 20 年代，电影业在加州的好莱坞建立了起来。这个行业吸引了大量的欧洲人，包括许多犹太人。今天，

加州的犹太人口在美国占第二位。

日本农民是在 20 世纪初期开始到加州来的，而从 20 世纪 80 年代以来就有更多的日本人在加州定居了。非洲人从 19 世纪就在加州住下来，他们是从墨西哥向北迁来的。然而，更多的非洲人是在 1942 年至 1945 年期间来到加州的，当时他们是到船厂和飞机厂工作。

最近期的移民

在最近的几十年里，加州成了更多的亚洲人的家，包括朝鲜人、柬埔寨人、越南人和老挝人。从 20 世纪 70 年代以来，计算机工业吸引了印度人和巴基斯坦人来到加州。

未来展望

世界各地的人，由于受到气候条件和生活方式的吸引，仍然在继续迁入加州。人们认为，要不了多久，多种国籍的混合将会非常之大，以致不可能存在一种主要的种族或文化群体，而是多种族、多文化的混合体。

GEORGE'S DIARY 12TH—14TH JUNE 乔治的日记

Monday 12th, June

Arrived early this morning by bus. Went straight to hotel to drop my luggage, shower and shave. Then went exploring. First thing was a ride on a cable car. From top of the hill got a spectacular view of San Francisco Bay and the city. Built in 1873, the cable car system was invented by Andrew Hallidie, who wanted to find a better form of transport than horse-drawn trams. Apparently he'd been shocked when he saw a terrible accident in which a tram's brakes failed, the conductor could not control the situation and the tram slipped down the hill dragging the horses with it.

Had a late lunch at Fisherman's What. This is the district where Italian fishermen first came to San Francisco in the late 19th century and began the fishing industry. Now it's a tourist area with lots of shops, sea food restaurants and bakeries. It's also the place to catch the ferry to Angel Island and other places in the Bay.

Did so much exploring at Fisherman's What. Am exhausted and don't feel like doing anything else. Early bed tonight!

Tuesday 13th, June

Teamed up with a couple from my hotel (Peter and Terri) and hired a car. Spent all day driving around the city. There's a fascinating drive marked out for tourists. It has blue and white signs with seagulls on them to show the way to go. It's a 79km round-trip that takes in all the famous tourist spots. Stopped many times to admire the view of the city from different angles and take photographs. Now have a really good idea of what the city's like.

In evening, went to Chinatown with Peter and Terri. Chinese immigrants settled in this area in the 1850s. The fronts of the buildings are decorated to look like old buildings in southern China. Saw some interesting temples here, a number of markets and a great many restaurants. Also art galleries and a museum containing documents, photographs and all sorts of objects about the history of Chinese immigration, but it is closed in the evening. Will go back during the day. Had a delicious meal and then walked down the hill to our hotel.

Wednesday 14th, June

In morning, took ferry to Angel Island from the port in San Francisco Bay. On the way had a good view of the Golden Gate Bridge. From 1882 to 1940 Angel Island was a famous immigration station where many Chinese people applied for right to live in USA. The cells in the station were very small, cold and damp; some did not even have light but the immigrants had nowhere else to go. Their miserable stay seemed to be punishment rather than justice and freedom to them. They wrote poems on the walls about their loneliness and mourned their former life in China. In 1940 the civil authorities reformed the system so that many more Chinese people were able to grasp the opportunity of settling in the USA. Made me very thoughtful and thankful for my life today.

6月12日,星期一

今天早晨到达乘公共汽车去。径直走到酒店掉我的行李,淋浴和刮胡子。然后去探索。首先是一个骑一匹缆车。从山顶上,得到了一个引人入胜的景观的旧金山海湾和这个城市。建立1873年,缆车系统由安德鲁赶紧发明,他想找一份更好的形式的交通比坐在弯折。显然,他很震惊,这时他看见了一起可怕的故事中,电车的刹车、导体不能控制的情况和电车滑下山坡马拖着。

有一晚中午在渔夫是什么。这是该地区在意大利渔民第一次来到旧金山在19世纪末,开始渔业的发展。现在是一个旅游地区很多商店,海鲜餐馆和面包店。这也是地方赶上渡轮天使岛和其他地方湾的。在探索做了那么多的渔人什么。太累了,也别想做的任何东西。早期今晚床!6月13日,星期二

和一对从我的酒店(彼得和特里)和租了一辆汽车。一整天都在推动全国各地的城市。有一个吸引人的驱动显示出在游客。它有蓝色和白色海鸥的标志,但在他们出示路要走。这是一个79km往返,将所有著名的旅游景点。停止许多次,欣赏眼前的景色的城市从不同的角度和拍照。现在有一个很好的主意的那个城市是什么样子。

傍晚,去唐人街彼得和特里。中国移民定居在这个地区18世纪50年代。穿越战线装饰的建筑物都看起来像旧建筑在中国南部。看到一些有趣的庙宇在这里,大量的市场和许多餐馆。也美术馆和博物馆包含文本、图片和各种各样的物体的中国移民的历史,但它是关闭的晚上。要回去在白天。了美味的一餐然后步行下山来我们酒店。6月14日,星期三

在上午,作为渡轮天使岛的港口在旧金山海湾。在有一个好的视野的金门桥。从1882年到1940年天使岛是一位著名的移民站在哪里许多中国个人申请生存权利在美国。这些细胞在车站很小,寒冷和潮湿,有些甚至没有光,但移民没有别的地方可去。他们的悲惨的保持似乎而不是正义和自由的惩罚。他们在墙上写诗对他们的孤独和悼念他们的前任在中国的生活。1940年中国政府改革的各项制度,使更多的中国人,人们能把握机遇解决在美国。让我非常体贴和感谢我的人生。

选修8 Unit 2 Cloning-Reading

CLONING: WHERE IS IT LEADING US? 克隆: 它将把我们引向何方?

Cloning has always been with us and is here to stay. It is a way of making an exact copy of another animal or plant. It happens in plants when gardeners take cuttings from growing plants to make new ones. It also happens in animals when twins identical in sex and appearance are produced from the same original egg. The fact is that these are both examples of natural clones.

Cloning has two major uses. Firstly, gardeners use it all the time to produce commercial quantities of plants. Secondly, it is valuable for research on new plant species and for medical research on animals. Cloning plants is straightforward while cloning animals is very complicated. It is a difficult task to undertake. Many attempts to clone mammals failed. But at last the determination and patience of the scientists paid off in 1996 with a breakthrough - the cloning of Dolly the sheep.

The procedure works like this:

On the one hand, the whole scientific world followed the progress of the first successful clone, Dolly the sheep. The fact that she seemed to develop normally was very encouraging. Then came the disturbing news that Dolly had become seriously ill. Cloning scientists were cast down to find that Dolly's illnesses were more appropriate to a much older animal. Altogether Dolly lived six and a half years, half the length of the life of the original sheep. Sadly the same arbitrary fate affected other species, such as cloned mice. The questions that concerned all scientists were: "Would this be a major difficulty for all cloned animals? Would it happen forever? Could it be solved if corrections were made in their research procedure?"

On the other hand, Dolly's appearance raised a storm of objections and had a great impact on the media and public imagination. It became controversial. It suddenly opened everybody's eyes to the possibility of using cloning to cure serious illnesses and even to produce human beings.

Although at present human egg cells and embryos needed for cloning research are difficult to obtain, newspapers wrote of evil leaders hoping to clone themselves to attain their ambitions. Religious leaders also raised moral questions. Governments became nervous and more conservative. Some began to reform their legal systems and forbade research into human cloning, but other countries like China and the UK, continued to accumulate evidence of the abundant medical aid that cloning could provide. However, scientists still wonder whether cloning will help or harm us and where it is leading us.

克隆一直与我们同在，而如今它还要持续下去。这是一种用来生产与原型完全相同的动植物的方法。当园艺师从生长着的植物上剪下枝条来培植新植物时，就会产生这种现象。这种现象也发生在动物身上，从同一个原生卵子产生性别和相貌相同的双胞胎也是克隆。实际上，这些都是自然克隆现象。

克隆技术有两大用途。第一，园艺师一直用它生产大量的供商用的植物；第二，它在对新植物物种的研究以及对动物的医学研究方面都是很有价值的。克隆植物简单，但克隆动物就比较复杂了，是一项很难完成的任务。克隆哺乳动物的多次尝试都失败了。但是，科学家的决心和耐心最终得到了回报，这就是 1996 年具有突破性的克隆羊“多莉”的诞生。它的程序如下图所示：

1. 母羊(A)提供一个卵细胞。
2. 在卵细胞中取出细胞核。
3. 卵细胞准备接受新的细胞核。
4. 母羊(B)提供一个供克隆的躯干细胞。该细胞核应包含生产一头新羊所需要的全部基因。
5. 取出该细胞的细胞核。
6. 用电把母羊(B)的躯干细胞核和母羊(A)的卵细胞结合起来。
7. 细胞分裂并生长成胚胎。
8. 把胚胎植入另外一头母羊(C)体内，母羊(C)就是克隆羊的代孕者。
9. 这头小羔羊就是母羊(B)所提，供的细胞核克隆而成的。

一方面，整个科学界都在关注着首例成功的克隆动物多莉羊的成长“多莉看来是在正常地

成长着，这很令人鼓舞。接着传来了多莉病重的坏消息。研究克隆的科学家发现多莉得的病更容易发生在年老的羊身上。这让他们很沮丧。多莉总共只存活了六年半，这是它的原型羊寿命的一半。可悲的是，同样无法控制的命运也在影响着其他物种，如克隆鼠。科学家的脑海里产生的问题是：“这是不是所有克隆动物的一个主要困难呢？这种现象会不会永远发生？如果改进程序，问题会不会解决？

另一方面，多莉的出生引起了一阵强烈的反对，对，对媒体和公众的想象力也产生了巨大的影响。它引起了争议，因为它突然打开了人们的眼界，看到了有可能：用克隆技术来治疗重病，甚至克隆出人类。

尽管目前供克隆研究的人体卵细胞和胚胎还很难得到，但报纸报道说，有些邪恶头目希望把自己克隆出来以实现他的野心。宗教领袖也提出了道德方面的问题。各国政府惶恐不安而且更加谨慎，有些政府开始改革司法制度，明令禁止进行克隆人类的研究。但是其他国家如中国和英国，则还在继续收集克隆技术有可能提供丰富有的医疗救助的证据。然而，科学家们仍对克隆技术有助于人类还是有害于人类，以及克隆技术将把我们引向何处困惑。

THE

RETURN OF THE DINOSAURS? 恐龙的回归？

The possibility of cloning fierce and extinct wild animals has always excited film makers. 克隆凶猛和灭绝的野生动物的可能性一直使电影制片人感到兴奋。And they are not the only ones! 然而他们并不是唯一对此感到兴奋的人。The popularity of films such as Jurassic Park, in which a scientist clones several kinds of extinct dinosaurs, proves how the idea struck a mixture of fear and excitement into people's hearts. 在《侏罗纪公园》这部影片中，有一位科学家克隆了好几种不同的绝种恐龙。类似这样的电影很受欢迎，证明了这一想法使人们感到既兴奋又恐惧。But in fact we are a long way from being able to clone extinct animals. 但事实上，想要克隆绝种动物，我们还要很长的路程要走。Scientists are still experimenting with cloning mammals. 科学家们现在还在进行克隆哺乳动物实验，This is because the cloning of mammals is still a new science and its story only began seriously in the 1950s as this list shows: 这是因为克隆哺乳动物仍然还是一门新的科学，它是从 20 世纪 50 年代才开始进行认真研究的，如下表所示：

1950s cloning of frogs	1996 first clone of a mammal: Dolly the sheep
20 世纪 50 年代克隆青蛙	1996 年首次克隆动物：多利羊
1970s research using the embryos of mice	2000 cow gave birth to a bison
20 世纪 50 年代用老鼠胚胎进行研究	2000 年母牛生野牛
1979 work on embryos of sheep and mice	2001 China's first cloned twin calves
1979 年对羊和老鼠胚胎进行研究	2001 年中国首次克隆出双胞胎小牛
1981 first experimental clones of mice	2002 first cloned cats
1981 年首次对老鼠试验性克隆	2002 年首次克隆猫
1983 first experimental clones of cows	2005 first cloned dog
1983 年首次对母牛试验性克隆	2005 年首次克隆狗

...

From time to time people suggest that extinct animals like dinosaurs, can possibly be brought back to life through cloning. 不时地会有人提议，克隆技术将有可能使地球上已经消失的动物（如恐

龙)复活。Unfortunately, with what we know now, this is either impossible or unsuitable. There are many reasons. 不幸的是, 据我们现在所知这是不可能的, 也是不合适的。其原因有很多:

◎ The initial requirement is that you need perfect DNA (which gives information for how cells are to grow). 首先要求你有完好的 DNA, 以提供有关细胞将如何生长的信息。

◎ All efforts of cloning an animal will be in vain if there is not enough diversity in the group to overcome illnesses. 如果某个动物群体没有足够的多样性以战胜疾病, 那么克隆这种动物的所有努力都将是无用的。Diversity in a group means having animals with their genes arranged in different ways. 群体的多样性是指这群动物的基因要以不同的方式排列。The advantage is that if there is a new illness some of these animals may die, but others will survive and pass on the ability to resist that disease to the next generation. 其优点是, 如果发生了某种新的疾病, 这类动物中的一些可能会死去, 而另外一些却能存活下来, 并且把这种免疫力传给下一代。The great drawback to cloning a group of animals is that they would all have the same arrangement of genes and so might die of the same illness. Then none of them would be left to continue the species. 经过克隆的动物群体的最大缺点是: 它们的基因排列有可能完全相同, 因而它们有可能会死于同一种疾病, 这样它们也可能一个也留不下来传种接代了。

◎ It would be unfair to clone any extinct animals if they were to live in a zoo. 你如果克隆出任何绝种动物, 而它们必须生活在动物园里那是不公平的。A suitable habitat would be needed for them to lead a natural life. 它们需要适当的栖息地过正常的野生生活。

Based on what we know now, you cannot clone animals that have been extinct longer than 10,000 years. 就我们现在所知, 你不可能克隆那些已经绝种了一万年以上的动物。Actually, dinosaurs disappeared 65,000,000 years ago. 事实上恐龙在 6,500 万年以前就已经消失了, So the chance of dinosaurs ever returning to the earth is merely a dream. 所以说恐龙回归地球的可能性仅仅是个梦想罢了!

选修 8 Unit 3

Inventors and inventions-Reading

THE PROBLEM OF THE SHRIKES 蛇的困扰

When I called up my mother in the countryside on the telephone she was very upset. "There are some snakes in our courtyard," she told me. "Snakes come near the house now and then, and they seem to have made their home here, not far from the walnut tree. Can you get rid of them please?" I felt very proud. Here was a chance for me to distinguish myself by inventing something merciful that would catch snakes but not harm them. I knew my parents would not like me to hurt these living creatures!

The first thing I did was to see if there were any products that might help me, but there only seemed to be powders designed to kill snakes. A new approach was clearly needed. I set about researching the habits of snakes to find the easiest way to trap them. Luckily these reptiles are small and that made the solution easier.

Prepared with some research findings, I decided on three possible approaches: firstly, removing their habitat; secondly, attracting them into a trap using male or female perfume or food; and thirdly cooling them so that they would become sleepy and could be easily caught. I decided to use the last one. I bought an ice-cream maker which was made of stainless steel. Between the

outside and the inside walls of the bowl there is some jelly, which freezes when cooled. I put the bowl into the fridge and waited for 24 hours. At the same time I prepared some ice-cubes.

The next morning I got up early before the sun was hot. I placed the frozen bowl over the snakes' habitat and the ice-cubes on top of the bowl to keep it cool. Finally I covered the whole thing with a large bucket. Then I waited. After two hours I removed the bucket and the bowl. The snakes were less active but they were still too fast for me. They abruptly disappeared into a convenient hole in the wall. So I had to adjust my plan.

For the second attempt I froze the bowl and the ice-cubes again but placed them over the snakes' habitat in the evening, as the temperature was starting to cool. Then as before, I covered the bowl with the bucket and left everything overnight. Early the next morning I returned to see the result. This time with great caution I bent down to examine the snakes and I found them very sleepy. But once picked up, they tried to bite me. As they were poisonous snakes, I clearly needed to improve my design again.

My third attempt repeated the second procedure. The next morning I carried in my hand a small net used for catching fish. This was in the expectation that the snakes would bite again. But monitored carefully, the snakes proved to be no trouble and all went according to plan. I collected the passive snakes and the next day we merrily released them all back into the wild.

Pressed by my friends and relations, I decided to seize the opportunity to get recognition for

my successful idea by sending my invention to the patent office. Only after you have had that recognition can you say that you are truly an inventor. The criteria are so strict that it is difficult to get new ideas accepted unless they are truly novel. In addition, no invention will get a patent if it is:

- Ⓐ a discovery
- Ⓑ a scientific idea or mathematical model
- Ⓒ literature or art
- Ⓓ a game or a business
- Ⓔ a computer programme
- Ⓕ a new animal or plant variety

Nor will you receive a patent until a search has been made to find out that your product really

is different from everyone else's. There are a large number of patent examiners, too, whose only job is to examine whether your claim is valid or not. If it passes all the tests, your application for a patent will be published 18 months from the date you apply. So I have filled in the form and filed my patent application with the Patent Office. Now it's a matter of waiting and hoping. You'll know if I succeed by the size of my bank balance! Wish me luck!

我给住在乡下的母亲打电话的时候，她感到很心烦。“我们院子里有几条蛇，”她告诉我说，“蛇时不时地爬到屋子旁边来，似乎是在屋子附近离胡桃树不远的地方安家了。你能不能把它们赶走？”我感到很自豪。这回我有机会来表现一下自己了。我要发明某种仁慈的东西，既可以把蛇捉住，而又不会伤害它们。我知道我的父母是不会让我伤害这些生物的。

我所做的第一件事就是看看有没有现成的任何产品能帮助我。但是，看来只有一种毒蛇的药粉。很明显，我得找一种新的方法了。于是我就着手研究蛇的习性，以便能用最容易的方法来捉住他们。好在这些爬行动物都很小，问题比较容易解决。

经过一番研究准备之后，我决定采用三种可能的方法：第一，铲除蛇的栖息地；第二，用男人或女人的香水或食物把它们引进陷阱；第三，降低它们的体温，使它们困乏，这样就很容易把它们捉住。我决定采用最后一种方法。我买了一个制冰淇淋的不锈钢碗。在碗的内壁和外壁都抹上果冻，这些果冻冷却后会冻结。我把这个碗放进冰箱，冷冻了 24 个小时。与此同时，我还准备了一些冰块儿。

第二次试验我用的还是冻结的碗和冰块儿，但是这次我是在夜晚气温开始变凉的时候把它们放在蛇窝的上方，然后像以前那样用桶把碗罩住，通宵放在那儿。第二天一早我就去看结果。这一次我小心翼翼地蹲下去检查的时候，发现蛇都是睡意浓浓的。但是一把它们提起来，它们就要咬我。因为它们都是毒蛇，所以很显然我还得改进我的捕蛇方案。

第三次试验重复了上一次的程序，不过第二天早晨我的手里拿了一个捕鱼用的小网。这是因为预料蛇还全再咬人。但是经过仔细监视，证明这些蛇是制造不了麻烦的，一切都按计划进行着。我把这些温顺的蛇收集起来，第二天就愉快地把他们全都释放到野外去了。

由于朋友和亲戚的敦促，我决定把我这次的发明运到专利局去，请他们对我这次成功的思路给予认可。只有你得到这种承认，你才可以说你是一个真正的发明者（评定）专利标准非常严格，除非新的想法真是新颖的，否则很难被接受。此外，你的想法如果属于下列情况，那么你也不可能得到专利：

- 一种发现 • 一种科学理论或数学模式 • 文学或艺术 • 一场游戏或一笔交易 • 一个电脑程序
- 一种新的动植物物种

你的产品要经过仔细调查，证明它确实是与众不同的，你才能获得专利。专利局还有一大批审查人员，他们的唯一职责就是审查你的专利申请是否有效。如果通过了所有这些审查，你申请的专利就会在你提出申请的 18 个月之后公布出来。于是，我填了表，向专利局提交了申请书。现在就是等，待和期盼了。将来你看看我的银行结余金额就会知道我是否成功了祝我好运吧。

ALEXANDER GRAHAM BELL 亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔

Alexander Graham Bell was born in 1847 in Scotland, but when he was young his family moved to Boston, USA. 亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔 1847 年出生于苏格兰。但在他还小的时候，他家就搬到了美国的波士顿。His mother was almost entirely deaf, so Alexander became interested in helping deaf people communicate and in deaf education. 他的母亲几乎全聋了，因此他有志于帮助聋人交流，并从事聋人教育事业。This interest led him to invent the microphone. 这一爱好促使他发明了麦克风。He found that by pressing his lips against his mother's forehead, he could make his mother understand what he was saying. 他发现他把嘴唇放在母亲的额头上，并以一定的方式来移动额骨，就可以使她听懂他所说的话。

He believed that one should always be curious and his most famous saying was: 他认为一个人应该总是有好奇心理。他最有名的一句话是：

"Leave the beaten track occasionally and dive into the woods. 一偶尔离开平路去寻求困境。Every time you do you will be certain to find something that you have never seen before. 每次当你这样做的时候，你一定会发现你从未见过的东西。Follow it up, explore all around it, and before you know it, you will have something worth thinking about to occupy your mind. 跟踪下去，不断探索，不知不觉中，你就会发现某种值得思考的东西盘踞着你的头脑。All really big discoveries are the result of thought."所有真正伟大的发现都是思考的结果。"

It was this exploring around problems and his dynamic spirit that led to his most famous invention - the telephone in 1876. 正是这种对问题的探索和富有活力的精神造就了他那最著名的发明——1876 年的电话。Bell never set out to invent the telephone and what he was trying to design was a multiple telegraph. 贝尔并非一开始就想要发明电话的，他本来想设计的东西是多路电报。This original telegraph sent a message over distances using Morse code (a series of dots tapped out along a wire in a particular order). 这种原始的电报是在一段距离中用莫尔斯电码传递信息（莫尔斯电码是通过电线发出的以特定的次序敲击出的一连串点划），But only one message could go at a time. 但是这样只能一次发一个信息。Bell wanted to improve it so that it could send several messages at the same time. 贝尔想改进电报通讯方式，以便同时能发出好几个信息。He designed a machine that would separate different sound waves and allow different conversations to be held at the same time. 他设计了一种机器，以使声波分成不同的音调，从而有可能在同一时间里进行不同的通话。But he found the problem difficult to solve. 但是他发现这个问题很难解决。One day as he was experimenting with one end of a straw joined to a deaf man's ear drum and the other to a piece of smoked glass, 有一天做实验，他把一根干草的一端和一个聋子的耳鼓膜连接起来，另一端连接一块被烟熏过的玻璃。Bell noticed that when he spoke into the ear, the straw drew sound waves on the glass. 贝尔发现，当他对着耳朵说话的时候，这根干草就把声波画在被烟熏过的玻璃上。Suddenly he had a flash of inspiration. 突然间他灵机一动，灵感来了。If sound waves could be reproduced in a moving electrical current, they could be sent along a wire. 如果声波能够以连续运动的电波形式复制的话，那么声波就可以沿着导线传送出去了。In searching to improve the telegraph, Bell had invented the first telephone! 在探求改进电报的过程中，贝尔发明了第一台电话机！

Bell was fully aware of the importance of his invention and wrote to his father: 贝尔完全懂得这项发明的重要性，他写信告诉他的父亲说：

"The day is coming when telegraph wires will be laid on to houses just like water or gas – and friends will talk to each other without leaving home." 一这样的一天即将到来。到那时，电报线将会铺到各家各户，就像水和煤气通到各家各户一样。朋友之间不必离开家就可以彼此通话了。The patent was given in 1876, but it was not until five days later that Bell sent his first telephone message to his assistant Watson. 这项专利是 1876 年发布的，但是贝尔是在五天以后才跟他的助手华生通了第一次电话。The words have now become famous: 他说的话现在已成为名言了。

"Mr Watson - come here - I want to see you." 一华生先生——到这儿来——我想见你。

Alexander Graham Bell was not a man to rest and he interested himself in many other areas of invention. 亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔是个闲不住的人，他对许多其他领域的发明都感兴趣。He experimented with helicopter designs and flying machines. 他试验直升飞机和飞行器。While searching for a kite strong enough to carry a man into the air, Bell experimented putting triangles together and discovered the tetrahedron shape. 他寻找一种强度足以把人带上天空的风筝，与此同时，他又试着把三角形拼装在一起，因而发现了四面体。Being very stable, it has proved invaluable in the design of bridges. 这种四面体非常稳定，被证明是在桥梁设计中的无价之宝。

Bell was an inventor all his life. 贝尔的一生都在发明创造。He made his first invention at eleven and his last at seventy-five. 他 11 岁时就有了第一项发明，而他的最后一项发明则是在他 75 岁高龄的时候。Although he is most often associated with the invention of the telephone, he was indeed a continuing searcher after practical solutions to improve the quality of everybody's life. 虽然人们常把他与电话的发明联系在一起，但是他的确是一位永不停息的探索家，不断寻求着改

善人们生活质量的途径。

选修 8 Unit 4 Pygmalion-Reading

PYGMALION 皮格马利翁

MAIN CHARACTERS:

Eliza Doolittle (E): a poor flower girl who is ambitious to improve herself

Professor Higgins (H): an expert in phonetics, convinced that the quality of a person's English decides his/her position in society

Colonel Pickering (CP): an officer in the army and later a friend of Higgins' who sets him a task

Act One

FATEFUL MEETINGS

11 :15 pm in London, England in 1914 outside a theatre. It is pouring with rain and cab whistles are blowing in all directions. A man is hiding from the rain listening to people's language and watching their reactions. While watching, he makes notes. Nearby a flower girl wearing dark garments and a woollen scarf is also sheltering from the rain. A gentleman (G) passes and hesitates for a moment.

E: Come over'ere, cap'in, and buy me flowers off a poor girl.

G: I'm sorry but I haven't any change.

E: I can giv'ou change, cap'in.

G: (surprised) For a pound? I'm afraid I've got nothing less.

E: (hopefully) Oah! Oh, do buy a flower off me, Captain. Take this for three pence. (holds up some dead flowers)

G: (uncomfortably) Now don't be troublesome, there's a good girl. (looks in his wallet and sounds more friendly) But, wait, here's some small change. Will that be of any use to you? It's raining heavily now, isn't it? (leaves)

E: (disappointed at the outcome, but thinking it is better than nothing) Thank you, sir. (sees a man taking notes and feels worried) Hey! I ain't done nothing wrong by speaking to that gentleman. I've a right to sell flowers, I have. I ain't no thief. I'm an honest girl I am! (begins to cry)

H: (kindly) There! There! Who's hurting you, you silly girl? What do you take me for? (gives her a handkerchief)

E: I thought maybe you was a policeman in disguise.

H: Do I look like a policeman?

E: (still worried) Then why did 'ou take down my words for? How do I know whether 'ou took me down right? 'ou just show me what 'ou've wrote about me!

H: Here you are. (hands over the paper covered in writing)

E: What's that? That ain't proper writing. I can't read that. (pushes it back at him)

H: I can. (reads imitating Eliza) "Come over' ere, cap'in, and buy me flowers off a poor girl." (in his own voice) There you are and you were born

in Lisson Grove if I'm not mistaken.

E: (looking confused) What if I was? What's it to you?

CP: (has been watching the girl and now speaks to Higgins) That's quite brilliant! How did you do

that, may I ask?

H: Simply phonetics studied and classified from people's own speech. That's my profession and also my hobby. You can place a man by just a few remarks. I can place any spoken conversation within six miles, and even within two streets in London sometimes.

CP: Let me congratulate you! But is there an income to be made in that?

H: Yes, indeed. Quite a good one. This is the age of the newly rich. People begin their working life in a poor neighbourhood of London with 80 pounds a year and end in a rich one with 100 thousand. But they betray themselves every time they open their mouths. Now once taught by me, she'd become an upper class lady ...

CP: Is that so? Extraordinary!

H: (rudely) Look at this girl with her terrible English: the English that will condemn her to the gutter to the end of her days. But, sir, (proudly) once educated to speak properly, that girl could pass herself off in three months as a duchess at an ambassador's garden party. Perhaps I could even find her a place as a lady's maid or a shop assistant, which requires better English.

E: What's that you say? A shop assistant? Now that's sommat I want, that is!

H: (ignores her) Can you believe that?

CP: Of course! I study many Indian dialects myself and ...

H: Do you indeed? Do you know Colonel Pickering?

CP: Indeed I do, for that is me. Who are you?

H: I'm Henry Higgins and I was going to India to meet you.

CP: And I came to England to make your acquaintance!

E: What about me? How'll you help me?

H: Oh, take that. (carelessly throws a handful of money into her basket) We must have a celebration, my dear man. (leave together)

E: (looking at the collected money in amazement) Well, I never. A whole pound! A fortune! That'll help me, indeed it will. Tomorrow I'll find you, Henry Higgins. Just you wait and see! All that talk of (imitates him) "authentic English" ... (in her own voice) I'll see whether you can get that for me ... (goes out)

主要人物:

伊莱扎·杜利特尔 (伊): 穷苦的卖花姑娘, 立志要改善自己的生活

希金斯教授 (希): 语音学专家, 坚信一个人的英语水平决定这个人的社会地位

皮克林上校 (皮): 陆军军官, 后来成了希金斯教授的朋友, 并给他安排了一项任务

第一幕 决定性的会面

1914 年的某日晚上 11 点 15 分, 在英国伦敦某剧场夕。正下着倾盆大雨, 四处响着出租车的鸣笛声。有一位男士在躲雨, 边听人们谈话边观察着人们的反应。他一边观察, 一边作记录。附近一个穿着黑色衣裙围着羊毛围巾的卖花姑娘也在躲雨。这时有位先生 (先) 从这儿路过, 他迟疑了片刻。

伊: 长官, 过这边来呀, 买我这个苦命的孩子一束花吧!

先: 对不起, 我没有零钱,

伊: 长官, 我可以给你找零钱呀。

先: (惊奇地) 一个英镑你找得开吗? 没有再小的钱了。

伊: (带有希望的神色) 啊! 好啦, 从我这买一束吧。拿这一束, 只要三个便士 o (举起一些

已经枯萎的花)

先：(不舒服地)现在别烦我，好姑娘。(在他的口袋里找什么，这时语气好些了)等一等，这儿有几个零钱。这点钱对你有用吗？雨下大了，不是吗？(说完就走了)

伊：(对先生付的钱表现出失望的样子，但是有总比没有好)先生，谢谢了。(看到有人在记什么，感到担心)嗨，我跟那位先生讲话，又没做错什么事。我有权卖花吧，我有权嘛！我不是小偷，我是个老实姑娘，老老实实的！(开始哭起来)

希：(友善地)好啦，好啦！谁伤害你了，傻姑娘？你把我当成什么人了？(递给她一条手帕)

伊：我还以为你是一个便衣警察呢。

希：我像警察吗？

伊：(仍在担心)那你为啥要把我说的话记下来呢？我怎么知道你是不是写对了呢？那你把你写的关于我的东西给我看看。

希：你看吧！(把写满字的纸递给她)

伊：这是什么呀？不像规规矩矩的字，我看不懂。(把纸退回给他)

希：我懂。(模仿伊的声音读)长官，过这边来呀，买我这个苦命孩子一束花吧！(改用自己的声音)好了吧，你呀，如果我没有弄错的话，你出生在里森格罗佛：

伊：(困惑不解的)如果我是又怎样呢？跟你有什么关系呢？

皮：(本来是一直望着这个姑娘的，这时跟希金斯说话了)太棒了！请问你是怎么知道的呢？

希：对人的发音进行研究、分类，如此而已。这是我的专业，也是我的业余爱好。你可以根据几句话判定是哪个地方的人。我可以根据任何谈话来判定他们是哪个地方的人，差距不过六英里，有时候在伦敦甚至不超过两个街区呢。

皮：恭喜你了！不过，你这样做有收入吗？

希：当然有哆，还挺高呢。这是个致富的年代，人们从伦敦的穷人区开始工作，年收入才 80 英镑，最后到了富人区工作，年收入就是 10 万英镑了，但是他们一张嘴就会露出马脚(暴露自己的身份)。如今如果让我一教，她就会变成一个上层阶级的淑女.....

皮：是吗？那太妙了！

希：(粗鲁地)你瞧这个姑娘，英语说得那样糟糕，使她注定要在贫民窟里待上一辈子。不过，先生，(高傲地)要是一旦有人教她把英语说好了，她就可以在三个月以内冒充公爵夫人出席大使主办的花园晚会了。说不定我还可 以给她找份工作，当一名贵夫人的侍女或商店的店员。这些工作都要求英语说得好呢。

伊：你说啥来着？店员？这正是我想要做的，真的！

希：(不理睬她)你相信我说的话吗？

皮：当然相信。我自己就学了好多种印度方言，而且.....

希：真的吗？那你认不认得皮克林上校呢？

皮：当然认得，皮克林就是我。那么请问您是谁？

希：我是亨利·希金斯。我还打算要去印度见你呢：

皮：我也正是到英国来找你的！

伊：我呢？你们怎么帮助我呢？

希：啊，拿去吧！(漫不经心地朝她的篮子里扔去一把钱)好老兄，我们该美美地庆祝一番了。

(一道离去)

伊：(惊奇地看着收集起来的钱)啊，我还从来没有见过！整整一个英镑呢！一笔财富呀！这的确给我帮大忙了，真的。明天我一定去找你，亨利·希金斯。等着瞧吧！你那口(模仿他的声音)“真正的英语”.....(用自己的声音)我倒要看看你能不能帮我找到.....(离去)

Act Two, Scene 1**MAKING THE BET 第二幕 第一场 打赌**

It is 11am in Henry Higgins' house the next day. Henry Higgins and Colonel Pickering are sitting deep in conversation. 第二天上午 11 点，在亨利·希金斯家。亨利同皮克林上校正坐着深切地交谈。

H: Do you want to hear any more sounds?

希：你还想不想听听更多的发音呢？

CP: No, thank you. I rather fancied myself because I can pronounce twenty-four distinct vowel sounds; but your one hundred and thirty beat me. I can't distinguish most of them.

皮：不听了，谢谢。我本来还很自负的，因为我能清晰地发出 24 个元音来。而你发出了 130 个元音，其中多数我都分辨不清。你赢我了。

H: (laughing) Well, that comes with practice.

希：（笑起来）这都是练习的结果。

There is a knock and Mrs Pearce (MP), the housekeeper, comes in with cookies, a teapot, some cream and two cups.

敲门声起，皮尔斯夫人（管）带着甜点、茶壶、奶酒和两个杯子进来。

MP: (hesitating) A young girl is asking to see you.

管：（犹豫地）一个年轻姑娘求见你。

H: A young girl! What does she want?

希：年轻姑娘！她想要什么？

MP: Well, she's quite a common kind of girl with dirty nails. I thought perhaps you wanted her to talk into your machines.

管：哦，很普通的一个年轻姑娘，手指甲脏兮兮的。我本来还以为你是要她来对着机器讲话的呢。

H: Why? Has she got an interesting accent? We'll see. Show her in, Mrs Pearce.

希：怎么啦？她的口音很有趣吗？咱们来看看吧。皮尔斯夫人，带她进来。

MP: (only half resigned to it) Very well, sir. (goes downstairs)

管：（半听不听地）好吧，先生。（随即向楼下走去）

H: This is a bit of luck. I'll show you how I make records on wax disks ...

希：还真是运气，我让你看看我是怎样在唱片上录音的。

MP: (returning) This is the young girl, sir. (Eliza comes into the room shyly following Mrs Pearce. She is dirty and wearing a shabby dress. She curtsies to the two men.)

管：（返回来）先生，这就是那个年轻姑娘。（伊莱扎跟在皮尔斯夫人后边羞怯地走进房来。她穿着破旧的衣服，还脏兮兮的。进来就朝两位先生行屈膝礼。

H: (disappointed) Why! I've got this girl in my records. She's the one we saw the other day. She's no use at all. Take her away.

希：（失望地）好啦，我已经给这个年轻姑娘做过记录了。她就是那天我们见到过的那个，现在根本没有用了，带她走吧！

CP: (gently to Eliza) What do you want, young lady?

皮：（温和地）年轻姑娘，你想要干什么？

E: (upset) I wanna be a lady in a flower shop 'stead o' selling flowers in the street. But they won't take me 'less I speak better. So here I am, ready to pay him. I'm not asking for any favours -

and he treats me like dirt.

伊：（不安地）我想在花店里当卖花姑娘，不想到街上去卖花了。但是他们不会要我，除非我讲话讲得好些，所以我来了，准备付给他钱。我并不是求他帮忙——可他把我当下贱人看待。

H: How much?

希：你给多少钱？

E: (happier) Now yer talking. A lady friend of mine gets French lessons for two shillings an hour from a real Frenchman. You wouldn't have the face to ask me for the same for teaching me as yer would for French. So I won't give yer more than a shilling.

伊：（比较高兴地）啊，你发话了。我的一位女朋友跟一个真正的法国人学法文，每小时两先令。你总不会好意思要我付跟法语同样多的钱吧。所以我最多给你一个先令。

H: (ignoring Eliza and speaking to Pickering) If you think of how much money this girl has - why, it's the best offer I've had! (to Eliza) But if I teach you, I'll be worse than a father.

希：（不理睬伊莱扎，而跟皮克林说）要是你想到这个年轻姑娘身上能有多少钱，那么，这就是我能得到的最高薪俸了！（对伊莱扎说）不过，要是我来教你，我会比当爸爸的还要严格。

CP: I say, Higgins. Do you remember what you said last night? I'll say you're the greatest teacher alive if you can pass her off as a lady. I'll be the referee for this little bet and pay for the lessons too ...

皮：喂，希金斯。你还记得昨天晚上你说过的话吗？如果你能使她冒充一位贵夫人，那么我说你就是这样一位最了不起的教师了。我会为这个小赌当裁判，而且课时费由我来付。

E: (gratefully) Oh, yer real good, yer are. Thank you, Colonel.

伊：（感激地）啊！你真好，真好。谢谢你，上校。

H: Oh, she is so deliciously low. (compromises) OK, I'll teach you. (to Mrs Pearce) But she'll need to be cleaned first. Take her away, Mrs Pearce. Wash her and burn her horrible clothes. We'll buy her new ones. What's your name, girl?

希：哦，她真是粗俗得可爱！（提出折衷办法）好吧，我教你。（对皮尔斯夫人说）不过，她得先把自己洗干净了。把她带下去，皮尔斯夫人。给她洗一洗，把那身可怕的脏衣服全部烧掉。我们给她买新的。姑娘，你叫什么名字？

E: I'm Eliza Doolittle and I'm clean. My clothes went to the laundry when I washed last week.

伊：我叫伊莱扎·杜立特尔。我是干净的，上个礼拜才洗过澡。

MP: Well, Mr Higgins has a bathtub of his own and he has a bath every morning. If these two gentlemen teach you, you'll have to do the same. They won't like the smell of you otherwise.

管：希金斯先生有自己的浴缸。他每天早晨都要洗澡。如果你要这两位先生教你，你就得照着办。另外，他们不想闻到你身上的那股气味。

E: (sobbing) I can't. I dursn't. It ain't natural and it'd kill me. I've never had a bath in my life; not over my whole body, neither below my waist nor taking my vest off. I'd never have come if I'd known about this disgusting thing you want me to do ...

伊：（哭泣）我不能，我不敢。这太别扭了，会要我的命的。我这一生从来没有在浴缸里洗澡过，特别是全身浸泡，冲洗腰部以下或者把我的背心拿走我也算是不会洗的。要是我知道你要我做这样的丑事，我是绝不会来的。

H: Once more, take her away, Mrs Pearce, immediately. (Outside Eliza is still weeping with Mrs Pearce) You see the problem, Pickering. It'll be how to teach her grammar, not just pronunciation. She's in need of both.

希：我再说一遍，把她带走，皮尔斯夫人，立刻带走。（伊莱扎跟皮尔斯夫人出去了，还在哭

泣) 皮克林, 你看到麻烦了吧。不仅仅是语音问题, 还得教语法呢。这两个方面她都需要。

CP: And there's another problem, Higgins. What are we going to do once the experiment is over?

皮: 希金斯, 还有一个问题。一旦试验完成了, 我们准备做什么呢?

H: (heartily) Throw her back.

希: (兴奋地) 把她扔回去。

CP: But you cannot overlook that! She'll be changed and she has feelings too. We must be practical, mustn't we?

皮: 你可不能小看这个问题了! 她是会变的, 她也是有感情的。我们必须实际一些, 难道不是吗?

H: Well, we'll deal with that later. First, we must plan the best way to teach her.

CP: How about beginning with the alphabet. That's usually considered very effective ... (fades out as they go offstage together)

皮: 先从字母教起, 怎么样? 通常认为那是最有效的……(两人一道朝台下走去, 声音逐渐减弱)

选修 8 Unit 5 Meeting your ancestors-Reading

A VISIT TO THE ZHOUKOU DIAN CAVES 周口店洞穴参观记

A group of students (S) from England has come to the Zhoukoudian caves for a visit. An archaeologist (A) is showing them round.

A: Welcome to the Zhoukoudian caves here in China. It is a great pleasure to meet you students from England, who are interested in archaeology. You must be aware that it's here that we found evidence of some of the earliest people who lived in this part of the world. We've been excavating here for many years and ...

S1: I'm sorry to interrupt you but how could they live here? There are only rocks and trees.

A: Good question. You are an acute observer. We have found human and animal bones in those caves higher up the hill as well as tools and other objects. So we think it is reasonable to assume they lived in these caves, regardless of the cold.

S2: How did they keep warm? They couldn't have mats, blankets or quilts like we do. It must have been very uncomfortable.

A: We've discovered fireplaces in the centre of the caves where they made fires. That would have kept them warm, cooked the food and scared wild beasts away as well. We have been excavating layers of ash almost six metres thick, which suggests that they might have kept the fire burning all winter. We haven't found any doors but we think they might have hung animal skins at the cave mouth to keep out the cold during the freezing winter.

S3: What wild animals were there all that time ago?

A: Well, we've been finding the bones of tigers and bears in the caves, and we think these were their most dangerous enemies. Now what do you think this tells us about the life of these early people? (shows picture of a sewing needle)

S2.: Gosh! That's a needle. Goodness, does that mean they repaired things?

A: What else do you think it might have been used for?

S4: Let me look at it. It's at most three centimetres long. Ah yes, it seems to be made of bone. I

wonder how they made the hole for the ...

S2: (interrupting) Do you mean that they made their own clothes? Where did they get the material?

A: They didn't have material like we have today. Can you guess what they used?

Sl: Wow! Did they wear clothes made entirely of animal skins? How did they prepare them? I'm sure they were quite heavy to cut and sew together.

A: Our evidence suggests that they did wear clothes made from animal skins. We continue discovering tools that were sharpeners for other tools. It seems that they used the sharpened stone tools to cut up animals and remove their skin. Then smaller scrapers were probably used to remove the fat and meat from the skin. After that they would rub an ample amount of salt onto the skin to make it soft. Finally, they would cut it and sew the pieces together. Quite a difficult and messy task! Now look at this. (shows a necklace)

S2: Why, it's a primitive necklace. Did early people really care about their appearance like we do? It's lovely!

A: Yes, and so well preserved. What do you think it's made of?

S4: Let me see. Oh, I think some of the beads are made of animal bones but others are made of shells.

A: How clever you are! One bone is actually an animal tooth and the shells are from the seaside. Can you identify any other bones?

S1: This one looks very much like a fish bone. Is that reasonable?

A: Yes, indeed, as the botanical analyses have shown us, all the fields around here used to be part of a large shallow lake. Probably there were fish in it.

S3: But a lake is not the sea. We are miles from the sea, so how did the seashells get here?

A: Perhaps there was trade between early peoples or they travelled to the seaside on their journeys. We know that they moved around, following the herds of animals. They didn't grow their own crops, but picked fruit when it ripened and hunted animals. That's why they are called hunters and gatherers. Now, why don't we go and visit the caves?

一群英国学生（学）来到周口店洞穴参观。有一位考古学家（考）正领着他们参观。

考：欢迎到中国来参观周口店洞穴。很高兴见到你们这些从英国来的对考古学感兴趣的学生。你们想必都很清楚，正是在这个地方，我们找到了世界上居住在这个地方最早人类的证据。我们在这儿进行的挖掘工作已经很多年了，而且.....

学 1:

对不起，打断一下你的讲话，请问他们是怎么住在这个地方的呢？这儿只有石头和树木。考：问得好。你是个敏锐的观察者，在高山上的那些洞穴里我们找到了人骨和兽骨，还有工具和其他物品因此，我们有理由认为他们不顾严寒，就住在这些洞穴里。

学 2: 那他们是怎样取暖的呢？他们不可能像我们现在这样有垫子、毯子和被子。想必是很不舒服的了。

考：我们发现在洞穴中央有生火用的地炉。他们用地炉里的火来取暖、做饭，还可以用火来吓跑野兽。我们一直在挖掘一层层的积灰，几乎有六米厚，这意味着他们可能整个冬天都在烧火。我们还没有找到门，但我们认为在天寒地冻的冬季他们可能是用兽皮挂在洞口来防寒的。

学 3: 在那以前有些什么野兽吗？考：嗯，我们在洞里发现了老虎和熊的骨头。我们认为这些野兽对他们来讲是最危险的敌人了。现在，你们看这个东西能告诉我们有关早期人类生活的什么情况呢？（指着一张有针线的照片让大家看）

学 2: 哎呀，那是一根针！天哪，难道他们还会修补东西吗？

考：除此之外，你认为还可能派别的什么用场吗？

学 4：让我看看。这个东西最多三厘米长，看起来像是用骨头做的。我不知道他们是怎样做成针眼的.....

学 2：（插话）你是不是说他们自己做衣服穿？他们又是从哪里得到衣料的呢？

考：他们没有像我们今天穿的这种衣料。你能猜出他们用的是什么呢？

学 1：哇，他们穿的衣服全都是用兽皮做的吗？他们那些衣服是怎样做成的？我确信它们裁剪并缝起来又厚又重。

考：我们有证据表明，他们的确穿的是用兽皮制的衣服。我们不断发现一些磨削其他工具用的工具。看样子他们可能是用磨尖的石器来切割野兽并剥皮，再用小一些的刮子把皮上的脂肪和肉去掉。然后，他们可能在兽皮上擦上大量的盐，使皮变柔软。最后进行剪裁，缝起来就成了。确实是既难又脏的活！现在来看看这个吧。（指着一串项链）

考：你真聪明！有块骨头实际上是野兽的牙齿，贝壳是从海边捡来的。你还认得别的骨头吗？

学 1：这根很像鱼骨头，对吗？

考：很对。植物学的分析结果明确地告诉我们，这儿四周曾经是一个很大的浅水湖。毫无疑问，当时湖里是有鱼的。

学 3：不过，湖并不是海呀，我们离海还远着呢。着壳，更壳又是怎么来的呢？

考：早期人类之间也许有贸易来往，或者他们也可能旅行到海边去。我们知道，他们跟着兽群四处走。他们并不种植谷物，而是在野果熟了的时候采摘它们并捕杀野兽来充饥。这就是他们被称之为猎人和采摘者的缘故。现在，咱们去参观洞穴好吗？

THE FEAST: 18,000 BC 公元前一万八千年的一次盛宴

Worried about the preparations for her feast, Lala quickly turned for home with her collection of nuts, melons and other fruit. 拉拉担心她这次盛宴的准备工作，所以赶紧把坚果、甜瓜和其他水果收集起来就快步回家了。It was the custom of family groups to separate and then gather again at different sites for reunions as they followed the animal herds across the grasslands. 由于在草原上放牧，家族成员先分散开，然后在不同的地方相聚，这是他们的一个习俗。A wrinkle appeared on her forehead. 她的额头出现了一道皱纹。If only it could be just like last year! 要是能像去年那样就好了！At that time she had been so happy when Dahu chose her as the future mother of his children. 当大胡选拉拉作未来孩子的母亲时，她觉得很高兴。He was the best toolmaker in the group and it was a great honour for her to be chosen. 他是这个家族中最好的工匠，被他选中对拉拉来说是莫大的荣幸。She remembered the blood pulsing through her veins. 她记得那时热血澎湃。She had felt so proud as the group shouted loudly to applaud his choice. 当族人为他的选择欢呼鼓掌的时候，拉拉觉得非常自豪。If only she had looked ahead and planned better this year! 她今年要是早有预见，计划得更好些就好了！Then she wouldn't have been feeling so worried now. 那么她就不会这么担心了。

Having heard wolves howling in the forest, Lala accelerated her walk up the path to the caves fearing that there might be wild beasts lying in wait for her. 听见狼群在森林里嚎叫，拉拉加快了回洞穴的步伐，担心会有野兽在等着她。She had no man with his spear to protect her. 她身边没有男人拿着矛来保护她。She had almost reached her destination when a delicious smell arrested her progress and she stopped. 快到目的地的时候，一阵香气扑鼻，她不往前走了，停了下来。So the men had brought home the meat for the feast! 因此那个男人把肉带回了家用来设宴！The smell of cooking meat filled the air surrounding her, and her senses became dizzy with

hunger. 肉的香味笼罩着她，使她因饥饿而头昏眼花。She could see her mother and the older children preparing the deer and pig meat over the fire. 她看到母亲和大一些的孩子在烧烤鹿肉和猪肉，Her aunts were making clothes with animal skins. 她姨妈在用兽皮做衣服。Abruptly she sat down, only to be scooped up by her laughing, shouting sister, Luna. 突然间她坐了下去，但又被她那又笑又叫的妹妹卢娜一把搂了起来，Lala smiled with relief. 拉拉宽慰地笑了，It was good to have her family around her. 跟家人在一起实在是太好啦！

Just then a tall man came up behind her. 就在这时候，她身后出来了一位高个子男人。He had a large, square face, with strongly pronounced eyebrows and cheekbones. 他有一张宽大的方脸，眉毛很重，颧骨突出，Over his shoulder he carried several fish and some pieces of wood under his arm. 肩上扛着几条大鱼，腋下夹着一些木头。Lala smiled and handed some stone scrapers over to Dahu, who smiled and went outside the cave to begin his task. 拉拉对大胡微笑着，递给他一些石头做的刮子。大胡也笑着，走出洞外，开始工作。

First he looked carefully at the scrapers and then went to a corner of the cave and pulled out some more tools. 他先朝这些石刮子瞧了瞧，然后走到洞穴的一个角落，拖出来更多的工具。They were in a pile with other sharp arrowheads and stone axe-heads. 这些工具同其它一些锐利的箭头和石斧头堆放在一起。He chose one large stone and began to use it like a hammer striking the edge of the scraper that needed sharpening. 他选了一个大块石头，用它做锤子敲打一个需要磨快的石刮子边沿。Now and then Dahu would stop, look at it and try it against his hand before continuing his task. 他时不时地停下来看看，在手上试一试，然后再继续工作。He stopped when he felt the scrapers were sharp enough to cut up the meat and scrape the fish. 当他觉得石刮子够快，可以切肉刮鱼鳞了，他才停下来，As he passed them to Lala, the first of the guests from the neighbouring caves began to arrive for dinner. 他把石刮子递给拉拉，这时候，第一批邻近洞穴的客人就开始到来吃饭了。Lala's spirits rose. 拉拉情绪高涨起来。Yes, it was going to be just as wonderful as last year! 是的，今年的盛宴一定会跟去年一样热闹！She smiled to herself gaily and went out of the cave to welcome her friends and neighbours. 她高兴地自己笑着，走出洞外，去欢迎她的朋友和邻居。

选修 9 Unit 1 Breaking records-Reading

"THE ROAD IS ALWAYS AHEAD OF YOU"路永在前方

Ashrita Furman is a sportsman who likes the challenge of breaking Guinness records. Over the last 25 years, he has broken approximately 93 Guinness records. More than twenty of these he still holds, including the record for having the most records. But these records are not made in any conventional sport like swimming or soccer. Rather Ashrita attempts to break records in very imaginative events and in very interesting places.

Recently, Ashrita achieved his dream of breaking a record in all seven continents, including hula hooping in Australia, pogo stick jumping under water in South America, and performing deep knee bends in a hot air balloon in North America.

While these activities might seem childish and cause laughter rather than respect, in reality they require an enormous amount of strength and fitness as well as determination.

Think about the fine neck adjustments needed to keep a full bottle of milk on your head while you are walking. You can stop to rest or eat but the bottle has to stay on your head.

While Ashrita makes standing on top of a 75 cm Swiss ball look easy, it is not. It takes a lot of concentration and a great sense of balance to stay on it. You have to struggle to stay on top especially when your legs start shaking.

And what about somersaulting along a road for 12 miles? Somersaulting is a tough event as you have to overcome dizziness, extreme tiredness and pain. You are permitted to rest for only five minutes in every hour of rolling but you are allowed to stop briefly to vomit.

Covering a mile in the fastest time while doing gymnastically correct lunges is yet another event in which Ashrita is outstanding. Lunges are extremely hard on your legs. You start by standing and then you step forward with the right foot while touching the left knee to the ground. Then you stand up again and step forward with the left foot while touching the right knee to the ground. Imagine doing this for a mile!

Yet this talented sportsman is not a natural athlete. As a child he was very unfit and was not at all interested in sports. However, he was fascinated by the Guinness Book of World Records.

How Ashrita came to be a sportsman is an interesting story. As a teenager, he began searching for a deeper meaning in life. He studied Eastern religions and, aged 16, discovered an Indian meditation teacher called Sri Chinmoy who lived in his neighbourhood in New York City. Since that time in the early 1970s, Ashrita has been one of Sri Chinmoy's students. Sri Chinmoy says that it is just as important for people to develop their bodies as it is to develop their minds, hearts and spiritual selves. He believes that there is no limit to people's physical abilities.

When Ashrita came third in a 24-hour bicycle marathon in New York's Central Park in 1978, he knew that he would one day get into the Guinness Book of World Records. He had been urged by his spiritual leader to enter the marathon even though he had done no training. So, when he won third place, he came to the understanding that his body was just an instrument of the spirit and that he seemed to be able to use his spirit to accomplish anything. From then on, Ashrita refused to accept any physical limitation.

With this new confidence, Ashrita broke his first Guinness record with 27,000 jumping jacks in 1979. The motivation to keep trying to break records comes through his devotion to Sri Chinmoy. Every time Ashrita tries to break a record, he reaches a point where he feels he cannot physically do any more. At that moment, he goes deep within himself and connects with his soul and his teacher. Ashrita always acknowledges his teacher in his record-breaking attempts. In fact, he often wears a T-shirt with Sri Chinmoy's words on the back. The words are:

"There is only one perfect road. It is ahead of you, always ahead of you."

阿什利塔·福曼是一位热衷挑战并总想争创吉尼斯纪录的运动员。在过去 25 年中，他大约 (approximately) 已经打破了 93 项吉尼斯世界纪录，至今，他仍然是其中 20 多项纪录的保持者，还包括拥有最多的吉尼斯纪录这一项。但是这些记录并不是像游泳或足球等一般运动项目那样创建的，而是阿什利塔试图在非常有趣的地点，在富有想像力的运动项目中打破的。

最近，阿什利塔完成了他的梦想：在所有七大洲破一项纪录，其中包括在澳洲玩呼啦圈，在南美洲的水下做弹簧单高跷游戏，在北美洲的热气球中做膝部深弯曲运动。

虽然这些活动看起来孩子气且令人发笑而不是让人肃然起敬，但实际上 (in reality), 完成这些活动需要强大的力量，健康的体格和坚定的决心。

想想吧，你一边走路，一边还要把一瓶牛奶顶在头上，你的脖子需要的多好的适应力。你可以停下来休息或吃东西，但瓶子必须呆在头上。

当阿什利塔站在 75 厘米高的瑞士球上时，看起来虽然很轻松容易，其实不然。呆在球上得一直全神贯注，还需要有极强的注意力和极好的平衡感。特别是在双腿开始抖动的时候，你还得使劲呆在球上。

然而沿着 12 英里的马路翻筋斗，情况又是怎样的呢？翻筋斗是一项艰苦的运动，因为你必须克服头晕、极度疲劳和痛苦。每翻滚一个小时，只允许休息 5 分钟，不过也可以短暂地停下来呕吐(vomit)。

做标准的体操(gymnastically)弓箭步动作向前，以最快的节奏走完 1 英里的路程是阿什利塔又一个出色的项目。弓箭步冲刺对你的双腿是一个极端艰苦的考验。开始时呈站立姿势，然后右脚向前迈一步，同时左膝触地，然后再站起来，左脚向前迈出一步，同时右膝触地。想想吧，这个动作要反复做 1 英里远！

然而，这位有才能的运动员并不是天生的。小时候，他很不健康(unfit)，而且对运动毫无兴趣。但他却对《吉尼斯世界纪录大全》非常着迷(fascinated)。

阿什利塔究竟是怎样成为一位运动员的呢？这是一个有趣的故事。少年时，他就开始探究人生的深层的意义。他研究过东方宗教，16 岁时，他发现了一位名叫斯里琴摩的印度静坐功(meditation)导师，住在纽约市他家附近。自从 20 世纪 70 年代初，阿什利塔就一直是斯里琴摩的学生。斯里琴摩指出，人们发展他们的体魄与发展他们的头脑、心灵和精神上的(spiritual)自我具有同等的重要性，并且他相信人的体能是没有局限的。

当阿什利塔 1978 年在纽约市中央公园进行的 24 小时自行车马拉松(marathon)比赛中获得第三名时，他就知道总有一天他将进入《吉尼斯世界纪录大全》。尽管从没有训练过，他还是受到他的精神领袖的敦促参加了马拉松比赛。因此，当他取得第三名的时候，他开始有了这样的认识：他的身躯只不过是他的精神的工具，而且他似乎能够利用他的精神力量去完成任何事。从那时起，阿什利塔就拒绝接受任何身体极限的说法。

由于有了这种新的信心，阿什利塔于 1979 年第一次打破吉尼斯纪录——跳爆竹 27000 次。不断努力打破纪录的动机源来自他对斯里琴摩思想的虔诚。每次试图破纪录的时候，阿什里塔都会达到一个体力不可逾越的极限点。这个时候，他就会进入自己的内心深处，与他的灵魂(soul)和他的老师相沟通。

在创纪录的努力中，阿什利塔总是要感谢他的老师。事实上，他常穿着一件 T 恤衫，后背上有斯里琴摩的名言：

“完美的道路只有一条，它就在你前方，永远在你前方。”

FOCUS ON ... 集中精力于……

Lance Armstrong

Date of Birth: 8th September, 1971

Country: USA

Lance Armstrong's Guinness record for the fastest average speed at the Tour de France was set in 1999 with an average speed of 40.27 km/hr. In his teens he was a triathlete but at 16 he began to concentrate on cycling. He was an amateur cyclist before the 1992 Olympic Games but turned professional after he had competed in the Games. In the following few years, he won numerous titles, and by 1996 he had become the world's number one. However, in October 1996, he discovered he had cancer and

had to leave cycling. Successfully fighting his illness, Armstrong officially returned to racing in 1998. In 1999 he won the Tour de France and in 2003 he achieved his goal of winning five Tours de France.

Michellie Jones

Date of Birth: 9th June, 1969

Country: Australia

In 1988 Michellie Jones helped establish the multi-sport event, the triathlon, in Australia. After completing her teaching qualifications in 1990, she concentrated on the triathlon. In 1991, she finished third at the world championships. In 1992 and 1993, she was the International Triathlon Union World Champion. Since then, she has never finished lower than fourth in any of the world championships she has competed in. At the Sydney Olympics in 2000 she won the silver medal in the Women's Triathlon, the first time the event had been included in the Olympic Games. Recently, for the first time in 15 years, Jones was not selected as part of the national team and therefore did not compete in the 2004 Olympics in Athens.

Fu Mingxia

Date of Birth: 16th August, 1978

Country: China

Fu Mingxia first stood on top of the 10-metre diving platform at the age of nine. At 12 years old she won a Guinness Record when she became the youngest female to win the women's world title for platform diving at the World Championships in Australia in 1991. At the 1992 Barcelona Olympic Games, she took the gold medal in the women's 10-metre platform, becoming the youngest Olympic diving champion of all time. This was followed by great success at the 1996 Atlanta Olympic Games where she won gold for both the 10-metre platform and the three-metre springboard. This made her the first woman in Olympic diving history to win three gold medals. She retired from diving after Atlanta and went to study economics at university. While there she decided to make a comeback and went on to compete at the Sydney Olympic Games, where she won her fourth Olympic gold, again making Olympic history.

Martin Strel

Date of Birth: 1st October, 1954

Country: Slovenia

Strel was trained as a guitarist before he became a professional marathon swimmer in 1978. He has a passion for swimming the world's great rivers. In 2000, he was the first person ever to swim the entire length of the Danube River in Europe - a distance of 3,004 kilometres in 58 days. For this, he attained his first entry in the Guinness Book of World Records. Then in 2001 he broke the Guinness record for non-stop swimming - 504.5 kilometres in the Danube River in 84 hours and 10 minutes. Martin won his third entry in the Guinness Book of World Records in 2002 when he beat his own record for long distance swimming by swimming the length of the Mississippi River in North America in 68 days, a total of 3,797 kilometres. Then in 2003 he became the first man to have swum the whole 1,929 kilometres of the difficult Parana River in South America. In 2004, Strel again broke his own Guinness record by swimming the length of the dangerous Changjiang River (4,600 km), the third longest river in the world.

兰斯·阿姆斯特朗

出生日期：1971 年 9 月 8 日

国籍：美国

兰斯·阿姆斯特朗的环法自行车赛最快平均速度的吉尼斯记录是他 1999 年以 40.27 公里 小时的平均速度创造的。在少年时期，他是一名三项全能比赛的运动员，但到 16 岁时，他开始集中精力于自行车运动。在 1992 年奥运会之前他还只是一名业余车手，但是在参加奥运会比赛之后，他就成为一名专业车手了。在随后的几年里，他获得了许多称号。到了 1996 年，他已经成为世界第一了。然而，在 1996 年 10 月，他发现自己患了癌症，不得不放弃骑车运动。在成功地战胜病魔之后，他于 1998 年正式重返赛场。1999 年他赢得了环法自行车赛的冠军。到 2003 年，他完成了自己在环法自行车赛上五次夺冠的目标。

米歇尔·琼斯

出生日期：1969 年 6 月 9 日

国籍：澳大利亚

1988 年，米歇尔·琼斯在澳大利亚帮助创建了“多项运动”比赛——三项全能运动。1990 年她取得教师资格证以后，就把精力集中在三项全能运动上。在 1991 年的世界锦标赛上她得了第三名。在 1992 年和 1993 年，她取得了国际铁人三项联盟的冠军。从那以后，在她所参加的任何一次世界锦标赛中，她从来没有低于第四名的成绩。在 2000 年的悉尼奥运会上，她又取得了女子三项全能运动的银牌。该项运动还是首次被纳入奥运会。最近，琼斯没有入选国家队，这是她 15 年来首次未被入选，因而她没能参加 2004 年的雅典奥运会。

伏明霞

出生日期：1978 年 8 月 16 日

国籍：中国

伏明霞首次站在 10 米跳台上是在她 9 岁的时候。1991 年，12 岁的伏明霞就获得了一项吉尼斯记录，当时她参加了在澳大利亚举行的跳台跳水世界锦标赛，成为最年轻的女子世界冠军。在 1992 年的巴塞罗那奥运会上，她夺得女子 10 米跳台的金牌，成为有史以来最年轻的奥运会跳水冠军。随后的巨大成功是在 1996 年的亚特兰大奥运会上，她又夺得 10 米跳台和 3 米跳板的金牌。这使伏明霞成为奥运会跳水史上第一位连续夺得三枚金牌的女子。在亚特兰大之后，伏明霞退股，到大学里学习经济。读书期间，她决定复出参加悉尼奥运会，结果她又获得第四枚奥运会金牌，再次改写了奥运会历史。

马丁·斯特雷

出生日期：1954 年 10 月 1 日

国籍：斯洛文尼亚

在 1978 年成为职业马拉松游泳运动员之前，斯特雷曾被作为吉他手培养。但是他有一股热情，想要到世界上的大江大河中去游泳。2000 年，他成为游完欧洲多瑙河全程的第一人——58 天游完了 3004 公里。为此，他第一次进入了《吉尼斯世界纪录大全》。随后在 2001 年，他打破了全程无间断游泳的吉尼斯世界纪录——在多瑙河中以 84 小时 10 分的时间游了 504.5 公里。马丁于 2002 年第三次进入《吉尼斯世界纪录大全》，这次他打破了自己创下的远距离游泳的世界纪录——在 68 天内总共游完北美洲密西西比河的 3797 公里。然后在 2003 年他成为游完难度巨大，全程 1929 公里的南美洲巴拉那河的第一人。到 2004 年，斯特雷再次破了他自己的吉尼斯记录，游了世界上第三大河长江的危险河段 4600 公里。

选修 9 Unit 2 Sailing the oceans-Reading

SRILING THE OCERNS 海洋航行

We may well wonder how seamen explored the oceans before latitude and longitude made it possible to plot a ship's position on a map. The voyages of travellers before the 17th century show that they were not at the mercy of the sea even though they did not have modern navigational aids. So how did they navigate so well? Read these pages from an encyclopedia.

Page 1:

Using nature to help Keeping alongside the coastline

This seems to have been the first and most useful form of exploration which carried the minimum amount of risk.

Using celestial bodies

North Star

At the North Pole the North Star is at its highest position in the sky, but at the equator it is along the horizon. So accomplished navigators were able to use it to plot their positions.

Sun

On a clear day especially during the summer the sailors could use the sun overhead at midday to navigate by. They can use the height of the sun to work out their latitude.

Clouds

Sea captains observed the clouds over islands. There is a special cloud formation which indicates there is land close by.

Using wildlife

Seaweed

Sailors often saw seaweed in the sea and could tell by the colour and smell how long it had been there. If it was fresh and smelled strongly, then the ship was close to land.

Birds

Sea birds could be used to show the way to land when it was nowhere to be seen. In the evening nesting birds return to land and their nests. So seamen could follow the birds to land even if they were offshore and in the open sea.

Using the weather

Fog

Fog gathers at sea as well as over streams or rivers. Seamen used it to help identify the position of a stream or river when they were close to land.

Winds

Wise seamen used the winds to direct their sailing. They could accelerate the speed, but they could also be dangerous. So the Vikings would observe the winds before and during their outward or return journeys.

Using the sea

Certain tides and currents could be used by skillful sailors to carry ships to their destination. These skills helped sailors explore the seas and discover new lands. They increased their ability to navigate new seas when they used instruments.

我们很可能感到奇怪, 在经纬度被用来在地图上标出船只位置之前, 海员是如何对海洋进行探索的。17 世纪以前的航海记录显示, 即使没有现代航海技术的帮助, 他们也没有任凭海洋摆布(at the mercy of)。那么他们是怎样航行得如此之好的呢? 读读百科全书(encyclopedia)这几页上的记载吧。

第一页：

借助大自然使船只沿海岸线行驶

这似乎是最早的、最有用的探险(exploration)方式, 所冒的风险也最小。

利用天体(celestial bodies)

●北极星

在北极, 北极星是在天上的最高位置; 而在赤道(equator)上, 北极星却在地平线(horizon)上。因此, 熟练的航海探险家就能够利用北极星来确定他们自己的位置。

●太阳

在晴朗的日子里, 特别是夏天, 船员可以利用正午在头顶上(overhead)的太阳来导航。他们可以利用太阳的高度来计算出他们自己的位置。

●云层

海上的船长观测岛上的云层。有一种特殊的云彩的形状表明附近有陆地。

利用野生动植物

●海藻

海员常常看到海里的海藻, 并能根据它的颜色和气味判断这种海藻在那儿有多久了。如果它颜色新鲜而且气味浓烈, 那说明船只就离陆地很近了。

●鸟

在看不见陆地的时候, 可以用海鸟来指明通往陆地的去路。在夜晚的时候, 筑巢而居的鸟就要返回陆地鸟窝。因此, 即使在远离海岸的大洋上, 海员们也可以跟随这些鸟儿到达陆地。

利用天气

●雾

正如雾气汇聚在溪流或江河上一样, 雾气也能汇聚在海洋上。当靠近陆地时, 海员们可以用雾气来帮助确定溪流或江河的位置。

●风

聪明的海员常常利用风向来导航。风向可以使船只加快速度, 也可以造成危险。于是, 北欧的海盗们在出海或返航时都要观察风向。

利用大海

技术娴熟的海员可以利用大海的某些潮汐(tides)或浪潮把船送往他们的目的地。

第二页：

利用航海工具

找出经度

直到 17 世纪英国人解决了这个理论问题后, 人们才有了测量经度的可靠方法。以前没有人知道地球每小时向东转动约 15 度, 然而海员们确实知道用速度和时间来计算经度的近似标准的方法。早期测量速度的方法是沿着船边拉一根打结的(knotted)绳子, 把这根绳子系在一根圆木(log)上, 然后把它抛入海里。当船只在水中前进时, 这些绳结从海员的手中通过, 这时海员就记下绳结的数目。在一定时间内计算出有多少个结, 就可以算出船只每小时航行多少海里(nautical miles)的速度。

后来, 当 12 世纪海员们开始使用指南针的时候, 他们就可以用复杂的数学表来计算出经度了。指南针有一个特殊的磁针(magnetic), 始终指着北极。因此人们用它来帮助找出船只所要去的方向。这样, 即使在大海中船只也可以直线航行。

找出纬度(latitude)

●方位圆

这是最早用来测量太阳位置的工具。海员可以测量太阳的影子，并把它同太阳在正午时的高度作比较，这样就可以知道自己在是在正确的航道上或是在随意行驶。

●星盘

星盘、象限仪和六分仪相互都有联系。它们是在彼此的基础上发展而成的。最早的是星盘，它是一种特殊的集多功能于一体的工具，它可以用来表明船只同太阳和布满天空的各种星星之间的相关位置。这样船员们就可得知当地的时间，以及他们在海上的纬度。但是，它不容易使用，因为其参照(reference)点之一就是行驶中的船只本身。

●象限仪

这是一种比较精确而且比较简单的星盘。它利用星盘的 $1/4$ 圆周而不是整个圆来测量星星在水平线上的高度。它比较容易操作，因为它比较轻便(portable)。缺点仍旧是使用移动的船只作为一个固定的参照点。因为船只海浪中起伏不定，所以很难测出精确的读数。

●六分仪

六分仪是方位圆和象限仪的改进版，它减少了出差错的可能性。在这些早期的航海仪器中，它被证明是最精确和最为可靠的一种，它的工作方式是用两块镜子来测量船外两个固状物体之间的角度，这就使得计数更加精确，而且更加容易操作。

Page 2:

Using navigational instruments to help 最伟大的航海里程
——幸存的经验教训

Finding longitude

There was no secure method of measuring longitude until the 17th century when the British solved this theoretical problem. Nobody knew that the earth moved westwards 15 degrees every hour, but sailors did know an approximate method of calculating longitude using speed and time. An early method of measuring speed involved throwing a knotted rope tied to a log over the side of the ship. The rope was tied to a log which was then thrown into the sea. As the ship advanced through the water the knots were counted as they passed through a seaman's hands. The number of knots that were counted during a fixed period of time gave the speed of the ship in nautical miles per hour.

Later, when seamen began to use the compass in the 12th century they could calculate longitude using complicated mathematical tables. The compass has a special magnetic pointer which always indicates the North Pole, so it is used to help find the direction that the ship needs to go. In this way the ship could set a straight course even in the middle of the ocean.

Finding latitude

The Bearing Circle

It was the first instrument to measure the sun's position. A seaman would measure the sun's shadow and compare it with the height of the sun at midday. Then he could tell if he was sailing on his correct rather than a random course.

A Bearing Circle

The Astrolabe

The astrolabe, quadrant and sextant are all connected. They are developments of one another. The earliest, the astrolabe, was a special all-in-one tool for telling the position of the ship in relation to the sun and various stars which covered the whole sky. This gave the seamen the local time and allowed them to find their latitude at sea. However, it was awkward to use as one of the points of reference was the moving ship itself.

The Quadrant

This was a more precise and simplified version of the astrolabe. It measured how high stars were above the horizon using a quarter circle rather than the full circle of the astrolabe. It was easier to handle because it was more portable. Its shortcoming was that it still used the moving ship as one of the fixed points of reference. As the ship rose and plunged in the waves, it was extremely difficult to be accurate with any reading.

The sextant

The sextant was the updated version of the astrolabe and quadrant which reduced the tendency to make mistakes. It proved to be the most accurate and reliable of these early navigational instruments. It works by measuring the angle between two fixed objects outside the ship using two mirrors. This made the calculations more precise and easier to do.

1789 年我有幸与布莱船长乘坐一条敞篷船航行了 40 余天，横穿太平洋，行程约 4000 英里。我们乘坐“邦蒂号”出发到塔希提岛这希航程中充满了各种事件。我以为回国后可以讲这些故事，但是我完全错了！在我们离开(departure)塔希提以后，有部分船员(crew)接管了这艘船。他们把船长放(deposit)进一条小船里，让他自己想办法回家。可是还有别的什么人同他一起走吗？在“邦蒂号”上的我们这些人有点儿进退两难：是冒着生命危险，挤坐在又小又拥挤的船上，只有少量的食物和水更好呢？还是与船上的人一起呆在“邦蒂号”上，面对被英国海军抓获的危险？想到这样对待布莱船长是多么错误的时候，留在船上的不利因素似乎增多了，因此我随船长上了小船。随着黄昏降临，我们似乎面对着一个不可预测的未来。没有航海图，允许船长带走的仪器只有一个指南针和一个四分仪。

一旦我们在海上，每天的事务总是一成不变。每当日出和日落的时候，船长就用四分仪测量我们的位置，并用指南针确定航线。因为船只总是在晃动，所以我们很难从四分仪上得到正确的读数。船长使用一个叫做“航位推算(reckoning)”的系统。他知道在我们原先位置的正西北方有陆地。因此，他的任务就是确保我们要在那个航线上。正如你在地图上所能见到的那样，我们很好地保持着这条笔直的航线。此外，船长还让我们大家都忙于解读表格，以计算出我们的位置。虽然这项工作占去了大量的时间，但那并没有关系。毕竟我们有的就是时间。

我们的日常食物全都是平均分配的：一片面包和一杯水。这点儿份量的食物只能让人处于饥饿之中，可是我们心理上最难承受的却是极度缺水。想想看，你的四周全都是水，但是一滴都不能喝，因为水中的盐分会弄得你精神失常！船长一直试图让我们保持良好的精神状态，他给我们讲故事，并且满怀希望地同我们谈论回到英国后所要做的事。我们对他只是将信将疑罢了。

随着食物和水的供应渐渐(gradually)短缺，船上的气氛也越来越紧张(tension)。可以预见到，如果不能很快地靠岸登陆，我们必死无疑。逐渐地我们陷入一种昏昏欲睡奄奄一息的状态。船长同我们这些人一样地虚弱，但是他决意不放弃。他每天继续不停地进行航海测量。他总是使我们忙个不停，并且竭力使我们忘记饥渴(thirst)。他使我们活了下来。

你简直无法想象我们被放在(set loose)小船上漂泊了 40 天后在帝汶岛登陆时的凄惨样子。我们衣衫褴褛(torn)，发着高烧，从脸上就能看出我们所遭受的痛苦。但是经过一段时间的休息，吃了几顿好饭，穿了几件新衣服之后一切情况就都变了。我们不停地讲述着我们航

行的经历,并且大家都想听我们讲。我们完成了历史上最伟大的航海壮举,我们成了从鬼门关(jaws of death)逃出来的英雄!

THE GREATEST NAVIGATIONAL JOURNEY:A LESSON IN SURVIVAL

I am proud to have sailed with Captain Bligh on his journey of over 40 days through about 4,000 miles in an open boat across the Pacific Ocean in 1789. Our outward voyage in the "Bounty" to Tahiti had been filled with the kind of incidents that I thought would be my stories when I returned home. But how wrong I was! On our departure from Tahiti, some of the crew took over the ship. They deposited the captain into a small boat to let him find his own way home. But who else was to go with him? Those of us on board the "Bounty" were caught in a dilemma. Was it better to risk certain death by sitting close together on a small, crowded open boat with very little food and water? Or should one stay on the "Bounty" with the crew and face certain death from the British Navy if caught? The drawback of staying on the ship seemed to grow as I thought about how wrong it was to treat Captain Bligh in this way. So I joined him in the small boat. As dusk fell, we seemed to face an uncertain future. We had no charts and the only instruments the captain was allowed to take with him were a compass and a quadrant.

Once we were at sea, our routine every day was the same. At sunrise and sunset the captain measured our position using the quadrant and set the course using the compass. It was extremely difficult for us to get a correct reading from the quadrant as the boat moved constantly. The captain used a system called "dead reckoning". He knew there was land directly northwest of our original position. So his task was to make sure we stayed on that course. As you can see from the map we kept to a straight course pretty well. In addition, the captain kept us all busy reading the tables to work out our position. Although this took a great deal of time, it didn't matter. Time was, after all, what we had a lot of!

Our daily food was shared equally among us all: one piece of bread and one cup of water. It was starvation quantities but the extreme lack of water was the hardest to cope with psychologically. Imagine all that water around you, but none of it was safe to drink because the salt in it would drive you mad! All the time the captain tried to preserve our good spirits by telling stories and talking hopefully about what we would do when we got back to England. We only half believed him.

The tension in the boat got worse as the supply of food and water gradually disappeared. We could foresee that we would die if we could not reach land very soon and we sank gradually into a sleepy, half-alive state. The captain was as weak as the rest of us, but he was determined not to give up. He continued his navigational measurements every day. He kept us busy and tried to take our minds off our stomachs and our thirst. He kept us alive.

You could not imagine a more disturbing sight than what we looked like when arriving in Timor over forty days after being set loose in our small boat. Our clothes were torn, we had fever and our faces showed the hardships we had suffered. But after a rest, some good meals and some new clothes, everything changed. We couldn't stop talking about our voyage and everybody wanted to hear about it. We were the heroes who had escaped the jaws of death by completing the greatest navigational feat of all time!

GLIMPSES OF AUSTRALIA 澳大利亚小览

AUSTRALIA

Capital: Canberra

Official name: Commonwealth of Australia

Area: 7,686,850 km²

Population: 20 million

Highest point: Mount Kosciuszko, 2,228 metres above sea level

Lowest point: Lake Eyre, 15 metres below sea level

Australia is the only country that is also a continent. It is the sixth largest country in the world and is in the smallest continent - Oceania. It is a mainly dry country with only a few coastal areas that have adequate rainfall to support a large population. Approximately 80 of Australians live in the south-eastern coastal area, which includes Australia's two largest cities – Melbourne and Sydney. The centre of the continent, which is mainly desert and dry grassland, has few settlements.

Australia is famous for its huge, open spaces, bright sunshine, enormous number of sheep and cattle and its unusual wildlife, which include kangaroos and koalas. Australia is a popular destination with tourists from all over the world who come to experience its unique ecology.

Australia is made up of six states. Like the states in America, Australian states are autonomous in some areas of government. However, Australia has a federal government responsible for matters that affect people all over the country, such as defence, foreign policy and taxation. The federal parliament is located in Canberra.

CITIZENSHIP CEREMONIES PLANNED AROUND

AUSTRALIA

On 26 January, Australia Day, in over 200 locations across the nation , more than 9,000 people will become Australian citizens.

"By these citizenship ceremonies we welcome those who have come from overseas from many different cultural and social backgrounds into our communities and our nation," said the Minister for Citizenship and Multicultural Affairs. "Australia Day celebrations that include people from so many birthplaces are an excellent way to encourage tolerance, respect and friendship among all the people of Australia."

Most citizenship ceremonies will be followed by displays of singing and dancing from many of the migrants' homelands and the tasting of food from all over the world.

Go by plane and see clouds

Go by TRAIN and see Australia

Enjoy 3 nights on board the Indian-Pacific

On this 4,352-km journey from Sydney to Perth via Adelaide you'll view some of Australia's unique scenery from the superb Blue Mountains to the treeless plains of the Nullarbor. Along the way you will spot a fascinating variety of wildlife.

Enjoy 2 nights on board the Ghan

As you travel from Adelaide to Darwin via Alice Springs, you'll observe some of Australia's

most spectacular landscapes - from the rolling hills surrounding Adelaide to the rusty reds of Australia's centre and the tropical splendour of Darwin.

For more information, timetables and fares go to www.gsr.com.au/trains.htm

Dear Shen Ping,

I wish you could see this amazing rock. It is part of one of Australia's 14 World Heritage Sites and rises about 335 metres out of a vast, flat sandy plain. At different times of the day it appears to change colour, from grey-red at sunrise, to golden and finally to burning red at dusk. Aboriginal people have lived near Uluru for thousands of years and you can walk around it with an Aboriginal guide to learn about their customs, art, religion and day-to-day life. It is also possible to climb the rock, but most people don't do this out of respect for the Aboriginal people who consider the rock to be sacred. I'll be back in Sydney in a fortnight because I've made a reservation on the Indian Pacific train to Perth.

Love Jack

Tours outside Hobart

Drive 250 km northwestwards from Hobart along the A10 highway and you'll arrive at the southern end of the magnificent Cradle Mountain National Park and World Heritage area. This park is famous for its mountain peaks, lakes and ancient forests. A popular attraction for active tourists is the 80-km walking track that joins the southern and northern ends of the park. There are also a range of short walks.

澳大利亚

首都:堪培拉

正式国名:澳大利亚联邦(commonwealth)

面积: 7 686 850 平方公里 人口:2 千万

最高点:科西阿斯科山, 高出海平面 2228m

最低点:艾尔湖, 低于海平面 15m

澳大利亚是唯一一个既是国家又是大陆的国家。它是世界上第六大的国家, 并且位于最小的大陆——大洋洲(Oceania)。这是一个干旱气候为主的国家, 只有少部分沿海地区有充足雨量, 可以维持着大量人口的生存。大约有 80%的澳大利亚人居住在东南沿海地区, 这里包括澳大利亚两个最大的城市——墨尔本和悉尼。

大陆中央主要是沙漠和干草地很少有人居住。

澳大利亚以其开阔的疆域、明媚的阳光、数不尽的牛羊和奇特的野生动植物而闻名, 其中包括袋鼠和树袋熊。澳大利亚是一个受人欢迎的旅游胜地, 世界各地的游客来到这里体验它独特的生态环境。

澳大利亚是由六个州组成的。像美国的州一样, 澳大利亚的州政府的某些部门自治。然而, 澳大利亚有一个联邦政府负责管理涉及全国人民的事务, 诸如国防、外交政策和税收(taxation)等。联邦议会设在堪培拉。

澳大利亚的公民庆典活动

1 月 26 是澳大利亚日, 全国 200 多个地方的 9 000 多人将成为澳大利亚的公民。

“我们以这些公民(citizenship)庆典的形式欢迎来自不同文化和社会背景的人加入到我们这个群体和国家中来。”公民与多元化事务部部长说。“来自许多不同的出生地的人参加澳大利亚日庆典活动。这种庆典活动是在澳洲全体人民中鼓励宽容(tolerance)、尊重和友爱的一种极佳方式。”

通常在公民庆典活动之后有一些来自移民(migrant)国家的歌舞表演, 还有品尝世界各地美味佳肴的活动。

乘飞机观云彩

坐火车看澳洲

乘印度洋——太平洋号列车三日游

从悉尼经(via)阿德莱德到佩思长达 4332 公里的旅途中, 你将看到澳大利亚所特有的美景, 既有巍峨秀美的蓝山, 也有望不见树木的纳拉伯平原。沿途中, 你还将看到各种各样引人入胜的野生动植物。

乘格安列车二日游

从阿德莱德经爱丽丝温泉到达尔文的旅程中, 你可以看到澳大利亚最壮丽的风景——从环绕阿德莱德的延绵起伏的群山, 到澳大利亚中部的红色(rusty)土地, 到达尔文美丽的热带景观(tropical splendour)。

查询详情、时间表与费用等请登陆: www.gsr.com.au/trains.htm

亲爱的沈平:

真希望你能够亲眼看到这块令人惊叹的岩石。它是澳大利亚 14 项世界遗产(heritage)之一, 矗立在一片广阔的沙地平原上, 高达 335 米。在不同时间里, 这块岩石会呈现出不同的颜色, 从日出时的灰红, 到金黄, 最后到黄昏时的火红。澳洲土著人(aboriginal)居住在乌卢鲁附近已经有几千年了。你可以找一位土著人向导带你去走一走, 了解那里人们的习俗、艺术、宗教和日常生活。要爬上这个巨石也是可能的, 但大多数人们出于对土著人的尊敬(out of respect)而不这么做因为他们认为这块岩石是神圣的。我会在两个星期后返回悉尼, 因为我已经预定(reservation)好了印度洋——太平洋号火车票前往佩思。

杰克

霍巴特市外之旅

从霍巴特沿 A10 号公路朝西北方向行驶 250 公里, 你就来到景色壮观的摇篮(Cradle)山国家公园暨世界遗产保护区的南端。这座公园以山峰、湖泊和远古森林而闻名。喜爱运动的旅游者还有个的好去处, 那就是贯穿公园南北的一条 80 公里长的徒步旅行路线, 此外还有一些短途旅行路线。

Reading and discussing

Before you read the following text, read the title and look at the pictures. Discuss with a partner what you expect to read about in the text.

AUSTRALIA'S DANGEROUS CREATURES 澳大利亚的危险动物

Australia is home to more than 170 different kinds of snake and 115 of these are poisonous. In fact, Australia has more kinds of venomous snake than any other country in the world. Luckily, the poison of most snakes can kill or paralyze only small creatures. A few varieties, however, can kill humans, so it is just as well that snakes are very shy and usually attack only if they are disturbed and feel threatened.

There are also approximately 2,000 different kinds of spider in Australia and, like snakes, most have a poisonous bite. However, the majority have no effect on humans or cause only mild

sickness. Only a few have venom that is powerful enough to kill a human being. While a small number of Australians are bitten by spiders each year, most recover without any medical treatment.

The seas around Australia contain over 160 different kinds of shark, which vary in size from just 20 centimetres to over 14 metres. However, although they look dangerous because of their wide mouths and sharp teeth, all but two or three kinds are harmless to humans.

Another potentially dangerous sea animal is the jellyfish. Most kinds of poisonous jellyfish can cause severe pain to anyone who touches them but the poison of the box jellyfish can actually kill a human, especially if that person has a weak heart. The tiniest amount of poison from a box jellyfish can kill in less than five minutes and it is probably the most poisonous animal in the world.

There is one other dangerous animal in Australia worth mentioning, and that is the crocodile. Although two types of crocodile live in Australia, only the saltwater crocodile has been known to kill humans. This crocodile moves very quickly when it sees something it considers to be food, and from time to time a crocodile has snatched someone before he or she is even aware that the crocodile is there.

You might think that with all these dangerous animals Australia is an unsafe place to live in or visit. However, this is far from the truth. There are no more than a handful of shark attacks each year and only three deaths have been reported in the last five years. Similarly, in the last three years there have been only two reported deaths from crocodile attacks. Since 1956, when an anti-venom treatment for redback spider bites was developed, there have been no deaths from redbacks, and since 1981 when a treatment was developed for funnelweb spider poison, there have been no deaths from this spider either. Treatments for jellyfish stings and snakebites have also been developed and in the last five years there have been only three deaths from jellyfish stings and about the same number from snakebites.

澳大利亚是 170 多种蛇的家乡，其中有 115 种是毒蛇。事实上，澳大利亚比世界上任何其它国家的毒(venomous)蛇品种都多。幸运的是，多数毒蛇的毒素只能杀死小动物，或使它们瘫痪(paralyze)。不过，还是有少数几种蛇能致人于死地。好在蛇都胆小怕事，通常只在被打扰和感到有威胁时才会出击。

在澳大利亚，还有着将近 2 000 种不同种类的蜘蛛。它们同蛇一样，多数蜘蛛咬起来也有毒。然而，绝大多数蜘蛛的毒素对人体并没有影响，或者只能引起轻微病痛。只有少数蜘蛛有剧毒(venom)，足以致人于死地。虽然每年有少数人被蜘蛛咬伤，但多数人不经治疗就能痊愈。

在环绕着澳大利亚的海域里有 160 多种鲨鱼，它们的体长从 20 厘米到 14 米不等。尽管它们有宽大的嘴巴和锋利的牙齿，看上去很危险，然而除了两三种之外，其余的对人类并没有危害。

另外一种具有潜在危险的海洋动物就是水母。多数有毒水母都会使任何触碰到它们的人痛苦万分，而箱水母的毒素则足以致人死亡，特别是如果这个人的心脏虚弱的话。箱水母极少量的毒素就可以在五分钟内致人死命，它也许是世界上最毒的动物。

澳大利亚还有一种值得一提的危险动物就是鳄鱼。虽然澳大利亚有两种类型的鳄鱼，但是我们只知道咸水鳄才会致人于死地。当这种鳄鱼看到某个东西并认为是食物的时候，它就

会迅速行动，就这样时常捕获(snatch)住那些还未来得及察觉到鳄鱼的人。

澳大利亚有这么多危险的动物，你也许会认为在这里居住或到这里旅游很不安全。但事实并非如此。每年只有少量的鲨鱼袭人事件，而且在过去五年里，只有三例死亡报道。与此相似的是在过去的三年间也只有两起鳄鱼袭击致死的报道。1956 年研制出一种治疗红背毒蜘蛛咬伤(anti-venom)的疗法，以后就再没有发生过红背蜘蛛咬死人的事件了。1981 年研制出一种对付漏斗蜘蛛的疗法，那以后就也没有人因此而死亡。治疗水母刺伤和毒蛇咬伤的方法也已经研制成功。在过去的五年里只有三人死于水母刺伤，这与被蛇咬伤致死的人数大体相同。

选修 9 Unit 4 Exploring plants-Reading

PLANT EXPLORATION IN THE 18TH AND 19TH CENTURIES18 世纪和 19 世纪的植物探索

The plants in our gardens look so familiar that often we do not realize that many of them actually come from countries far away. Collecting "exotic" plants, as they are called, dates back to the earliest times. Many ancient civilisations saw the value of bringing back plants from distant lands. The first plant collecting expedition recorded in history was around 1500 BC when the Queen of Egypt sent ships away to gather plants, animals and other goods.

However, it was not until the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries that the exploration of the botanical world began on a large scale. Europe had become interested in scientific discovery and the European middle classes took great interest in collecting new plants. This attraction to exotic plants grew as European nations, like the Netherlands, Britain and Spain, moved into other parts of the world like Asia and Australia. Brave young men took the opportunity of going on botanical expeditions, often facing many dangers including disease, near-starvation, severe environments and conflicts with the local people.

An important group of collectors were French Catholic missionaries who, by the middle of the 18th century, were beginning to set themselves up in China. One such missionary, Father d'Incarville, was sent to Beijing in the 1740s. He collected seeds of trees and bushes including those of the Tree of Heaven. Just before he died, he sent some Tree of Heaven seeds to England. They arrived in 1751 and plants from these seeds were grown throughout Europe and later, in 1784, the species was introduced in North America.

Sir Joseph Banks was a very famous British plant collector, who accompanied James Cook on his first voyage from England to Oceania. The purpose of the trip for Banks was to record the plant and animal life they came across. He and his team collected examples whenever they went onto dry land. In 1769, Banks collected vast quantities of plants in the land now known as Australia. None of these plants had been recorded by Europeans before. Cook called the bay where the Endeavour had anchored Botany Bay.

Keeping plants alive during long land or sea voyages was an enormous challenge. Large numbers of seeds failed to grow after long sea voyages or trips across land between Asia and Europe. One plant explorer lost several years' work when his plants were mined with seawater.

The world of plant exploration was completely changed with Dr Nathaniel Ward's invention of a tightly sealed portable glass container. This invention, called the Wardian case, allowed plants to be transported on long journeys. In 1833, Ward shipped two cases of British plants to Sydney, Australia. All the plants survived the six-month journey. In 1835, the cases made a return trip with some Australian species that had never been successfully transported before. After eight months at sea, they arrived safely in London.

A British man called Robert Fortune was one of the earliest plant collectors to use Wardian cases. He made several trips to China between 1843 and 1859. At that time, there were restrictions on the movement of Europeans and so, in order to travel unnoticed, he developed his fluency in Chinese and dressed as a Chinese man, even shaving his head in the Chinese style. He experienced many adventures including huge thunderstorms in the Yellow Sea and pirates on the Yangtze River. Not only did Fortune introduce over 120 species of plants to Western gardens but he also shipped 20,000 tea plants from Shanghai to India, where a successful tea industry was established.

The second half of the nineteenth century was a very important period of plant exploration. During this time many Catholic missionaries were sent to China from France. They valued the study of the natural sciences and many of the missionaries knew a lot about plants and animals. Their expeditions resulted in huge plant collections, which were sent back to France. One of the collectors was Father Farges, who collected 37 seeds from a tree that had appealed to him. This tree was later called the Dove Tree. He sent the seeds back to France in 1897 but only one seed grew.

Although the missionaries collected large numbers of specimens, there was not enough material for growing particular species in Western gardens. However, European botanists were very excited with the knowledge that China had a vast variety of plants, so many plant collectors were sent on collecting trips to China. One of these collectors was E H Wilson who, in 1899, was able to collect a large quantity of seeds of the Dove Tree that Father Farges had discovered. Wilson and other plant collectors introduced many new plants to Western gardens.

我们花园里的植物看上去是那么熟悉,以致我们常常意识不到在这些植物中有许多实际上来自遥远的国度。收集所谓的“异国”(exotic)植物要追溯(date back to)到很久以前。许多古老文化都懂得从遥远的地方把植物带回来的价值。历史上有记载的第一个收集植物的探险是在公元前 1500 年,埃及女王派出船只去收集植物、动物以及其他货物。

然而,直到 18 世纪和 19 世纪人们对植物世界大规模(scale)的探索才开始。那时欧洲对科学发现已经倍感兴趣,而欧洲的中产阶级则特别热衷于收集新的植物。随着欧洲人,如荷兰、英国和西班牙向世界其他地区,如亚洲和澳洲的迁徙,这种对异域植物的吸引力也在增长。勇敢的年轻人借机进行植物探索活动,他们常常面临许多危险,如疾病、饥饿、严酷的环境以及同当地居民的冲突。

有一群重要的收集者是法国天主教教士(missionaries) 18 世纪中叶,他们开始进入中国。其中有一位叫汤执中的传教士于 18 世纪 40 年代被派赴北京。他收集了树种、灌木种,其中包括天堂树的种子。就在他去世之前,他还把一些天堂树的种子送到了英国。1751 年它们抵达英国,由这些树种长成的树遍布了全欧洲。后来在 1784 年,这个物种又被引进到了北美。

约瑟夫·班克斯爵士是一位著名的英国植物收集家、他曾经陪同詹姆斯·库克进行了从英

国到大洋洲的首航。班克斯这次出行的目的就是要把他们所见到的植物和动物的情况记录下来。他和他的队员们每次进入干燥的土地时都要收集样品。1769 年，班克斯在我们如今所知道的名叫澳大利亚的这块土地上收集到大量的植物，而在欧洲还没有有关这些植物的记载。库克还把“奋进号”(Endeavour)抛锚(anchored)停靠的地方称为植物湾。

要使植物在陆地上或海上远距离航行时存活下来，是一个巨大的挑战。在亚欧之间经过海上或陆上远程旅行之后，大量的种子都不能生长。曾有一位植物探险家由于他的植物被海水侵蚀腐烂而使他好几年的成果毁于一旦。

纳撒尼尔·沃德医生所发明的便携式密封玻璃容器彻底改变了植物探索的世界。这项发明被称为沃德箱，可以用来进行远距离的植物运输。1833 年，沃德把两箱英国植物运到了澳大利亚的悉尼。所有这些植物经过六个月的航行都存活了下来。1835 年这些箱子又带着一些过去从来没有被成功运输过的澳洲物种作了回程之旅。在海上历经八个月的航行之后，它们安全抵达了伦敦。

有一位名叫罗伯特·福琼的英国人，是使用沃德箱的最早期的植物收集家之一。在 1843～1859 年之间，他曾多次到中国。那时候，欧洲人在中国的活动受到种种限制(restrictions)，因此，为了在旅行中不引起别人注意，他努力使自己的汉语讲得很流利(fluency)，并且穿着中国人的服装，甚至像中国人一样削发(留辫)。他经历过多次险情，包括在黄海碰到过巨大的风暴，以及在长江遭遇海盗(pirates)的袭击。福琼不仅把 120 余种植物引入西方园林，而且还把两万株茶树用船从上海运到了印度，印度的制茶工业就成功地发展起来了。

19 世纪下半期是植物探索的一个非常重要的时期。在这期间，许多法国天主教的传教士被派到中国。他们很着重自然科学的研究，而且许多传教士对动植物都很了解。他们远征的结果是收集了大量的植物，并把它们运回法国。其中一位叫作法尔热的神父，从他所喜爱的一棵树上收集了 37 粒种子。这种树后来被称作鸽子(Dove)树。他于 1897 年把这些种子送回法国，但是只有一粒种子得以生长。

虽然传教士收集了大量的物种，但是在西方人的花园里种植特殊物种的材料仍很缺乏。然而欧洲植物学家(botanists)知道中国有着品种繁多的植物，并为此感到兴奋不已。因此，许多植物收集人员被派去中国进行采集工作，其中有一位叫做 E·H·威尔逊的，他在 1899 年收集到大量的法尔热神父所发现的鸽子树种子。威尔逊及其他植物收集者为西方人的花园引进了许多新的植物。

Reading and discussing

Before you read the text on page 38, have a quick glance at it. What is the text about? What do the pictures show you? What is the chart about?

选修九 Unit4 THEIR ANIMAL POLLINATORS 花朵及其动物传媒

Over time, many flowering plants and their animal pollinators have evolved together. 许多开花的植物长期以来是和它们的动物传媒一起发展的。The plant needs the animal to pollinate it and the animal is rewarded with food called nectar when it visits the flowers. 植物需要动物帮它授粉，动物从中得到回报——当其接触花时，能够得到被称为花粉的食物。Pollen becomes attached to the animal during its visit to a flower and is then passed on to another plant's blossom on its next visit. 动物接触一朵花时，花粉就附着在它的身上，动物接触下一朵时，就把这些花粉传到另外的那朵花上。

So pollination takes place, therefore increasing the chances of the survival of the plant species. 这样通过授粉就增加了植物物种生存的机会。

Through evolution, most flowers have adapted to attract specific types of pollinators. 通过进化，大部分花朵变得适于吸引某种花粉传播者。Bees, moths and butterflies are the most important pollinators. Flies, wasps, beetles and other animals such as birds and bats are less common. 蜜蜂、飞蛾和蝴蝶是最重要的传媒。而苍蝇、黄蜂、甲虫和其他诸如小鸟、蝙蝠之类的动物则是较为少见的传媒。

The type of pollinator depends on the characteristics of the flower such as its colour, shape, size and smell. 花粉传播者的类型取决于花朵的特性，如花朵的颜色、形状、大小和气味。

For example, yellow flowers attract bees, while red flowers attract butterflies. 举例来说，黄色的花吸引蜜蜂，而红色的花则吸引蝴蝶。

The nectar in some flowers can only be reached by a bird with a long bill or a long-tongued moth or butterfly. 有些花的花粉只有长嘴鸟、长舌蛾或者蝴蝶才可以够得着。

The chart below describes some features of flowers that attract certain kinds of pollinators. 下面这张图表记述了吸引某种花粉传播者的花朵特性： Pollinator 虫媒 Typical flower characteristics 花朵的典型特性

Bees 蜜蜂

Colour: bright yellow, blue; the flower often has a special pattern to guide the bees to the nectar inside. 颜色：嫩黄色、蓝色；这种花常有一种特殊的花纹，吸引蜜蜂找到里面的花蜜。

Shape: the petals are wide enough for bees to land on; usually the nectar is at the end of a small, narrow tube whose length is the same as the tongue of a particular species. Smell: delicate, fragrant.

形状：花瓣宽大，足够蜜蜂落在上面，花粉通常在狭小的花管子的一段，其长度于特定花粉传播者的舌头相当。 气味：微弱，芳香

Butterflies 蝴蝶 Colour: red, orange. 颜色：红色、橙色

Shape: the petals form a tube of a suitable length for butterflies. Tiny flowers are often in tight bunches that provide a place for butterflies to land on, eg daisies. 形状：花瓣聚为管状，其长度适应蝴蝶，纤小的花朵经常聚在一块儿，自成一束，以便蝴蝶能有地方降落，如雏菊。 Smell: odourless. 气味：无味。

Moths 飞蛾 Colour: white, light-coloured so moths can see them at night. 颜色：白色、浅色，以便飞蛾在夜晚能看清。

Shape: the petals form a deep tube to match the length of a specific moth's tongue. The petals lie flat or bend back so the moth can get close to the flower. 形状：花瓣开成一个深管子，其长度与特定蛾子的舌头长度相当。花瓣伸展或向后弯曲，以便飞蛾靠近花朵。

Smell: strong, sweet perfume, typically only given out at night. 气味：浓烈的香甜味，特别只在夜晚散发出来。

Flies 苍蝇 Colour: dull-coloured, brownish red. 颜色：灰暗色、褐红色。 Smell: strong like rotting meat. 气味：浓烈的像腐肉似的气味。

Humming-birds 蜂鸟 Colour: brightly coloured, especially red and orange. 颜色：鲜艳颜色，特别是鲜红色和橙色。

Shape: tube-shaped; petals bent back so birds can get close. 形状：管状，花瓣向后卷，以便鸟儿接近。

Smell: no odour. 气味：无臭味。

Bats 蝙蝠 Colour: white, light-coloured so bats can see them at night. 颜色：白色、浅色，这样蝙蝠

蝠夜晚能够看到。

Shape: open at night; large, strong with wide mouths for long tongues. 形状：夜晚开花；大而坚，嘴宽，可供长舌伸入。

Smell: musty, fruity smell. 气味：发霉的果子味。

选修九 Unit 5 Inside advertising 广告内情 HOW ADVERTISING WORKS 广告是如何起作用的

Do you know how many advertisements you are exposed to in your daily life? 你知道你在日常生活中要面对多少广告吗？

Every day, we pass by advertisements on buses and billboards, on trains and in train stations, in shop windows, outside restaurants and on public notice boards. 每天在公共汽车上和广告牌上，在火车和火车站里，在商店的橱窗里，在餐馆的外边以及公告牌上，我们都会遇到广告。

At home, we see advertisements in magazines and newspapers and in the middle of our favourite television programmes. 在家里，我们从报刊、杂志上，在我们喜欢的电视节目间隙中都可以看到广告。We hear advertisements on the radio and come across them on the Internet. 我们还可以从广播中听到广告，在网络上看到广告。Even some of the casual garments we wear have brand names attached to them which turn us into walking advertisements. 至在我们穿的有些休闲服上也印着品牌的名字，这就把我们变成了移动广告。

With so many messages from advertisers filling our daily lives, it is important to understand how advertisements work. Then we can avoid being controlled by them. 甚我们的日常生活中充满了众多的广告信息，可见了解广告如何发挥作用是很重要的事情，这样我们才有可能避免被广告左右。What is an advertisement? 什么是广告？

An advertisement is a message or announcement that informs or influences people. 广告是告知人们或对人起影响作用的信息或告示。It can use words, pictures, music or film to communicate its message. 它可能用文字、图片或影片来传达其信息。

Adverts are not only made and paid for by business, but also by individuals, organizations and associations that wish to inform or educate the public. 广告不仅可由商家付费制作，也可以由想要向公众传达或教育公众的个人、组织或协会来出资制作。

How do advertisers make effective advertisements? 广告商是如何制作有效的广告？Identify your target 识别你的目标

Advertisers must pay the media for displaying their ads. 广告上必须付费给展示广告的媒体。Their money would be wasted if the message didn't reach its target audience, in other words the people the advertisement intends to persuade. 如果信息不能传达给她的信息群体，也就是广告意图说服的人群的话，那么他们的钱就白花了。

For example, adolescent boys are more likely to buy computer games than any other group, so it makes sense to make computer game ads that appeal to this group. 举例说，进入青春期的男孩子就可能比任何其他人群更愿意购买电脑游戏，因此，针对这个目标群体制作有吸引力的电脑游戏广告才是有意义的。

Having identified the target group, researchers find out as much as possible about those in the target group, such as their likes and dislikes, and how the product would fit into their lives. 明确了广告的目标群体后，研究人员就会尽量收集这个群体的有关信息，例如他们的好恶，以及如何使产

品适应他们的生活。

This information then forms the basis for decisions about what type of advertising techniques to use with this group. 于是，这个信息就构成了针对这部分人采用何种广告技术的决策基础。

Appeal to your target 迎合你的目标

In order to persuade people to do something, advertisements often appeal to our hopes and dreams or our emotions. 为了说服某人采取某种行动，广告常常要迎合我们的希望、梦想或情感。

For example, the one on the right, which advertises sports shoes, shows young people doing exciting things. 譬如右图的运动鞋广告，它表现的是年轻人正做着一些刺激的运动，（广告的）颜色和其中的火焰也使人感到兴奋。

The colours and the flames also suggest excitement. The message it is sending is: "Buy our shoes and you'll live an exciting life in the 'fast lane'." 它所传递的信息是：一购买我们的运动鞋，你就能在_快车道‘过上令人兴奋的生活。The ad above, with the star in it, is for a new radio station. 上方的那幅广告（上面有一个五角星）是为一个新的无线电台制作的。

It appeals to people's desire to "fit in" and be part of the group. 它迎合了人们想要一适应_并成为其中一员的愿

望。The message is: "Everyone else is listening and if you want to be part of the group, you'd better listen too." 它传达的信息是：一其他人都在听。如果你想成为其中的一份子，你最好也听一听。_

Some advertisements appeal to people's desire to save money. Others are more likely to be noticed if they are funny. 有的广告迎合人们省钱的愿望，另外一些广告则因为有趣而受人注目。Ads that feature rich and famous people will grab the attention of those who admire people like that. 而以有钱人和名人为特色的广告则会抓住那些对他们羡慕的人的注意力。

Some adverts, like the environmental protection advertisement below, appeal to our conscience or our desire to be worthy citizens. 还有一些广告就像下面那种有关环境保护的广告，就符合我们的良知，或者就迎合了我们想成为有价值的公民的愿望。

Use a suitable medium 采用合适的媒体

As well as reaching the right audience with the right technique, advertisers must also place their ads in the right medium. 正如要用恰当的方式吸引合适的消费者，广告商还得将广告置于恰当的媒体上。Obviously, cost will play a big part in this decision. 很明显，做这个决定的时候，花销起很大的作用。Television adverts are expensive to make and to show. 电视广告的制作与播放是非常昂贵的。You have to be a big corporation with a big budget to afford television ads. 你必须是一家大公司，有大笔经费，才能做得起电视广告。

Advertisements in newspapers, on the other hand, are much cheaper. 而另外一方面，用报纸做广告就会便宜得

多。As well as worrying about the expense, advertisers must also consider which media are most appropriate for their product and which their target audience is most likely to see or hear. 正如担心费用一样，广告客户还必须考虑哪种媒体最适合他们的产品，并且他们的目标群体最愿意收看或收听哪种媒体。

Because most cars have radios, ads broadcast via radio can reach a lot of drivers very easily. 因为大多数汽车都有收音机，司机们很容易地就能收听到通过无线电广播传送的广

告。For this reason, it would be appropriate to use radio to advertise goods and services relating to cars. 因为这个缘故，用无线电播送与汽车有关的产品与服务就很合适。

However, it would be no use advertising products on radio if the ad relies on visual effects. 但是如果

一项产品的广告要依靠视觉效果，那么它在收音机里播出就毫无意义了。Television adverts are great for generating emotional responses to a product, but magazines and newspapers can give more detail. 电视广告能够激起人们对某种产品产生情感反应，但报刊杂志能够给更详细的介绍。

How effective are advertisements? 广告的效果如何?

However good an advertisement is, people are unlikely to be persuaded if the product is unsuitable for them. 一则广告无论如何制作得多么好，如果产品不合适，也不可能使人信服。For example, no matter how good an ad for a car stereo system is, people who don't own cars are unlikely to run out and buy one. 举例来说，不管一个汽车的立体声系统多么好，那些没有汽车的人是不可能跑去买它的。Look at the advertisements in this unit. 看一看本单元中的这些广告吧。How many of the goods or services suit your interests or lifestyle? 你对其中多少商品或服务感兴趣，它们是否符合你的生活方式呢？

Would really good advertising persuade you to buy products and services you are not interested in or have no use for? 是不是有好的广告会说服你去买并不感兴趣或对你没有用处的商品服务呢？On the other hand, being constantly exposed to advertisements can help to change our opinions over time. 另一方面，经常处于广告的包围中，我们的想法有可能随着时间的流逝而发生变化。This is why governments all over the world pay a lot of money for ads on such things as road safety. 这就是为什么世界各地的政府会花大量的金钱来制作诸如道路安全之类的广告，They believe these adverts will affect the way people think about their driving habits and will subsequently reduce the number of road accidents. 他们认为这些广告让人们认真思考他们的驾驶习惯，从而减少交通事故的数量。

选修九 Unit 5 KEEPING ADVERTISERS HONEST 做广告的人应守诚信

Organizations and individuals advertise because they want to persuade people to behave in certain ways, for example to buy a certain brand of rice, stop speeding or see a movie at their cinema. 组织和个人都做广告，因为他们都说服别人按某种方式来行事，例如要你买某个牌子的大米，或者要你停止高速驾车或在他们的电影院里看一场电影。Advertisers go to a lot of trouble and expense to make adverts and so they want to make sure they achieve their purpose. 广告制作者在广告上花了不少精力和财力，因此，他们要确保能达到他们的目的。

Unfortunately, not all advertisers are good or honest people. Unless we have ways to protect ourselves, these dishonest advertisers will tell lies or use methods that may mislead us. 不幸的是，并不是所有的广告商都诚实、正直。除非我们有办法进行自我保护，否则这些不老实的广告上就会说谎，或者采用误导我们的手段。

Fortunately, most countries have developed ways to control advertising and prevent false or unsuitable advertising. 好在多数国家都采用了一些办法来控制广告业，防止虚假不实的广告。The law 法律

One way to control advertising is to make laws that prevent advertisers doing the wrong thing. 控制广告的办法之一就是制定法律以约束广告商们的不法行为。Many countries have laws that forbid ads being shown at inappropriate times or in unsuitable places. 许多国家制定了法律，禁止在不恰当的时间和不适宜的地点播放广告。For example, an ad that has an adult theme cannot be shown during children's television progra

mmes. 譬如有成人内容的广告就不能在儿童电视节目的时间里播放。

In some countries advertising alcoholic drinks or tobacco is banned altogether. 在有些国家里, 酒类及烟草的广告都是一概被禁止的。

There are also laws in most places that prevent advertisers making false statements about their products or from promoting immoral or harmful behaviour. 在许多地方还制定了法律, 以防止广告商为他们的产品说假话, 或者宣传不道德或有害的行为。

Advertising organizations 广告组织

Most advertisers are decent and honest, and they are as interested as everyone else in making sure ads are ethical. 多数广告商都是正派、诚实的。他们和其他人一样也致力于确保广告合乎道德规范。

For this reason, most advertisers belong to advertising organizations that not only educate and support their members, but also make rules for everyone in the organization to follow. 为此, 多数广告商都是从属于某个广告组织。广告组织不仅仅对其成员进行教育和支持, 而且还制定多种规则让组织中的每个成员都必须遵守。

They are called a code of ethics and include such rules as: Advertisements must not be untruthful or misleading; Advertisements must not say bad things about other people's products. 这些规则被称为道德规范, 他们包括以下规则: 广告一定不能失实或误导; 广告一定不能说别人产品的坏话。If well-known people are used in advertisements, they must be honest and truthful about products they advertise. 如果广告中用到人名, 那么他们必须对所宣传的产品确保诚信。Complaints organization 投诉机构

Even though there are laws and advertisers' codes of conduct, some bad ads do get made. 虽然有法律和广告的行为规范, 还是有很多糟糕的广告被制作出来了。This is why many countries have a government organization which examines complaints about ads. 这就是为什么许多国家都设有检查有关广告投诉的政府机构。

A consumer can complain to the organization, giving reasons for their complaint, and if the complaint is correct, the organization can make the company stop using the offending advertisement. 消费者可以向这个机构投诉, 提出投诉的理由。如果投诉是正确的, 该机构可以责令该公司停止用这种令人不愉快的广告。The consumer 消费者

You may have heard the saying: "Buyer Beware". 你可能听说过——买者自负——的说法。This means that the consumer is responsible for checking the product before buying. 这就是说消费者有责任在购买其产品之前对产品进行检查。When it comes to advertising, consumers need to be educated about techniques used by advertisers so they can judge the claims for themselves and not blindly accept everything that is said in advertisements. 涉及广告时, 消费者需要了解广告商所使用的伎俩。这样他们才能对各种广告主张做出自己的判断。而不致盲目地接受广告中所说的一切。

As we are flooded with advertisements in our modern world, many schools believe it is their duty to educate students about advertising. 当今社会上广告泛滥成灾, 许多学校认为它们有责任对学生进行有关广告的教育。

人教版选修 10 课文译文

一次成功的失败经历

如果起初不成功, 就要一次又一次地尝试。——W·C·菲尔兹

1914 年 8 月，珀斯·布莱克鲍罗参加了欧内斯特·沙克尔顿爵士的“持久号”轮船南极探险。沙克尔顿是他那个时代最负盛名的探险家，加入他的探险活动被认为是一种巨大的荣耀。现在请 看读帕斯所讲故事的第一部分。

1916 年 8 月 29 日 慢慢地，我把头探出睡袋，向四周看了看。一切都是灰色的：小屋里面看上去是灰色的，晨曦看上去是灰色的，燃油炉上噗噗作响的罐子也是灰色的。同往常一样，气味中混合着汗液、海豹油脂和脏内衣的味道，几乎让人难以忍受。我尝试着想一些快乐的事情：温暖和干爽的衣服、舒适的卧室、阳光灿烂的日子、妈妈的脸庞，以及返家后得到的庆贺，因为我是试图横穿南极大陆的一次失败探险活动的成员之一，这种事以前还没有人做过。正想到这儿，一条黑毛毯掉下来 把我盖住，几乎把美好时光的记忆封闭住了。一想到由于冻伤变黑而必须截去的腐烂的脚趾头，我就感到喘不过气来。我们的境况让人绝望，谁也不清楚会不会活着回去。也许好些年后，我们的尸体会被其他探险队所辨认并搜集起来。

正当我快要变得自我怜惜起来时，我们营棚的门开了，一股冷空气穿过营棚。“把门关上！”我 用一种自己都快辨认不出来的沙哑的嗓音嚷嚷道。“坚持下去，珀斯。不要变成另一个汤姆。”一个声音在应答。“我们又逮住了一只企鹅，今晚有企鹅汤喝了！”保佑弗兰克一吓尔德，他可是我们 的头儿欧内斯特·沙克尔顿之外最好的人啦。我怎么能像汤姆·奥德·利兹那样自私自利和脾气 暴躁呢！我挣扎着下床，新的一天开始了。

当初宣布探险活动时，我才 20 岁，老梦想着要去冒险。所以在 1914 年 7 月的一个早晨，我是 怀着无比激动的心情读以下这则广告的：

为危险之旅招募人手：工资低廉、寒冷无比、数月不见天日、无法确保安全返回。如果成功， 荣耀和报酬将会接踵而至。欧内斯特·沙克尔顿爵士。

同伟大的欧内斯特·沙克尔顿爵士去南极探险——我被深深地迷住了！我是探险的门外汉，但 我年轻，身体健康而且精力充沛。我偷偷地上了“持久号”轮船，藏在一个小橱里。直到轮船已 开始航行了，我才被人发现，而且晕船晕得很厉害。不管怎么说，沙克尔顿似乎对我傻乎乎的行 为感兴趣，并且接受了这种局面。他让我当一名伙计，协助做 28 个人一天三顿的饭菜。

1915 年 1 月 18 日，正当我们接近南极时，“持久号”被海上的浮冰(有的坚固无比，有的破裂 成若干巨大的冰块浮在水上)卡住了。周围的冰都冻结了，我们千真万确地被困住了！轮船在我们的 眼前慢慢地被挤坏。我相信沙克尔顿肯定会对这次探险意想不到的结局而痛心，但他并没有把时 间浪费在遗憾和悔恨中。他镇静地把大家召集在一起，然后紧急宣布我们必须 在船沉下去之前， 只抢出基本给养，尤其是小船、食物、炊具、蜡烛、卧具和衣服。为了显示自己的决心，沙克尔 顿把一些金币和他的金表扔到冰上。然而，让我感到惊讶的是，他竟鼓励赫西带上班卓琴。他把 班卓琴描述成让我们保持精神振奋的关键。

他的顽强精神赢得了我们对他的完全信赖。他对我们也总是坦诚相待(就像广告中那样)，他从不 灰心丧气，从不放弃，甚至当轮船沉下去时也是如此。1916 年 4 月 9 日，我们搬到了大象岛上现 在的宿营地。不久沙克尔顿给我们这里的生活列出了规矩：取消级别和社会地位上的差异，每个 人都得忙起来；公平分配食物和卧具；关心每一个人。这种团队精神鼓舞了船员们的士气，并挽 救了我们的生命。

我们在大象岛上一安顿好，沙克尔顿就马上向大家解释了他的营救计划：22 人留在这里，他 挑选其他五个人去南乔治亚求援。由于谁也不知道我们身处何地，所以不能指望任何外部救援。我 永远也不会忘记眼看着小船从哗哗作响的波浪中消失在波涛汹涌的大洋里的情景。留在大象岛 上的人发誓要按他所主张的那样做：在他返回来救我们之前要保持乐观、恢复健康。

“乐观帮助，我们锲而不舍”

我们留在了岛上，看着沙克尔顿和小船驶离大象岛。起初，他们将面临的危险、回来寻找我们的机会、以及害怕再也无从知晓他们的命运和可能的耽搁，都使我们情绪低落、沮丧不已。不过，这并没有持续很长时间。除了美味的企鹅餐和动感音乐外，没有其它东西能再让人感到愉快了。

现在生活转入了常规。单单活下去这一项就耗费了我们所有的时间和精力。例如我们必须抓住和溶化海面上的冰块来收集淡水。如果冰块溶化了一段时间，水里面的盐分就会消失，之后变成适于饮用的淡水。然而淡化冰块却是个问题。南极地区不长树，也没有油料，唯一可供我们作燃料的便是海豹脂肪。燃烧海豹脂肪会产生油腻的黑烟，但它有能在强风中烧旺的好处。火熄灭后我们也可以吃剩下的东西。

食物也是个问题，因为找不到蔬菜和水果。作为大家中的一员，莱昂内尔·格林斯特里特数周后在日记中提到他对饭菜是何其厌烦：“现在食物全是肉。海豹肉排、煮海豹、企鹅肉排、煮企鹅、企鹅肝”。作为厨子，我的责任就是把这些动物清洗干净并做成熟肉。没过多久他们就不断鼓动我想方设法去变化伙食的花样。这可真不容易。

我们必须特别要注意自己照顾自己，因为变幻的气温可能会伤害到我们。穿衣服太多而太热同穿得太少而太冷差不多一样危险。太热导致出汗，而汗水很快就会结成冰。另外一个需要特别小心的身体部位是眼睛。冰雪会反射阳光的危险射线，所以如果不戴太阳镜，可能会造成日盲症。

在这样彻骨的寒冷中，这种状况持续的四个月是我们 22 人所能承受的极限。我们很走运，因为我们全组努力显示出一种令人钦佩的精神状态，并且以积极的态度成功地克服的无所不在的恐惧。最重要的是沙克尔顿曾鼓励我们举办各种庆祝活动：庆祝生日、庆祝节日，甚至就仅仅因为企鹅的捕获量大也庆祝一番。这让我们保持振奋的情绪，并且增进了团队和谐的气氛。

当救援真的赶来时，我们长长地松了口气，欣喜不已，许多人忍不住流下了眼泪。我们终于可以自由地回家，躺在温暖的床上，品尝可口的食物，享受家庭和朋友的关爱了。乐观和对沙克尔顿的信任帮助我们坚持顽强地活了下来，他给我们的回报则是承诺返回岛上，并且把我们从缓慢而又痛苦的死亡中解救出来。

李尔王

第一部分

国王的觐见室。李尔王上场，国王的女儿们：贡纳莉、里根和科迪莉亚；贡纳莉和里根的丈夫奥尔巴尼公和康沃尔公爵；肯特公爵，国王的一位忠实朋友。

李尔：我亲爱的女儿们，我老了，也累了。治理国家的重担落在我的双肩。我已决定退休，把责任重担传到你们三人手中。瞧，这是我的王国地图，边界都标在上面。我已把国家一分为三，给你们每个人划分一份。现在告诉我，亲爱的孩子们，你们当中谁最爱我？因为你们当中不管是谁，只要最有孝心，我就把最好的一块给她。贡纳莉，你说说看。

贡纳莉：父王，我无法用语言来表达我对您深深的爱。我爱您胜于爱世上所有的财富，胜于爱我的自由，甚至还胜于爱我的眼睛。事实上，我爱您胜于爱自己的生命。

李尔：（给她女儿看地图）我亲爱的女儿，你和你丈夫奥尔巴尼将拥有王国的这一部分，包括其中所有的河流、森林和山脉。你们的孩子可以继承下去。里根，现在轮到你了。你对我说什么呢？

里根：姐姐在表达她对您爱的同时，也道出了我的心声。然而我对您的爱甚至是无法用语言表

达的。我爱您胜于深爱世界上的一切。我最大的幸福就是爱您。

李尔：为你和你的丈夫康沃尔以及你们未来的孩子，我把王国的为的一部分赐予你们（给他们看地图）。这部分同我给贡纳莉的那部分价值相等。现在，我亲爱的，我最喜欢的孩子，我的科迪莉亚，你说什么来取悦一位老人，赢得王国最好的部分呢？

科迪莉亚：我无话可说，我的父亲。

李尔：无话可说？

科迪莉亚：无话可说。

李尔：无话可说你将一无所获。我求求你说几句。

科迪莉亚：很抱歉，我不像姐姐们那样聪明。我不会用这么花哨的话来描述我的感觉。我爱您如同一个女儿恰如其分地爱着父亲，一分不多，一分不少。

李尔：好好想一想，科迪莉亚。否则的话，你将丧失你应得的那一份土地。

科迪莉亚：亲爱的父亲，您把我带到这个世界上，关心我，疼爱我。作为回报，我爱您、敬重您、服从您。我搞不明白姐姐们为什么那样讲。如果她们真的那样爱您，那我不明白她们为什么要嫁人。您知道，只要我一嫁人，我就有职责把一半的爱分给我的丈夫。

李尔：此话当真？

科迪莉亚：是的，陛下。

李尔：年纪轻轻，心肠却铁硬。

科迪莉亚：年纪轻轻，但是实话实说，我的陛下。

李尔：那么，好吧。就让实话作为你的回报吧。你不再是我的女儿了，我心里再也没有你。

肯特：但是，陛下……

李尔：别说话，肯特。不许阻止我发怒。她曾是我最疼爱的女儿。我曾想同她一道度过晚年，但那种事情再也不会发生了。你这个仆人，去找一下法国国王和勃艮第公爵。我们倒要看看，她没有分毫嫁妆，你们俩谁愿意当她的新郎。贡纳莉、里根，我把我的王国分给你们两人。我自己什么也不要，只要一支由百名最忠诚的卫兵组成的队伍来照看我保护我。我没有第三个亲生女儿，我将同你们两个过日子——一个月在这家，下个月在另一家。

肯特：但是，陛下，我求您……

李尔：别顶撞我，就这么定了。

肯特：但是，陛下，请听我讲完。我要替科迪莉亚讲几句话。我已侍奉您多年，您是知道的，我一直敬您为君王，也像爱父亲一样爱着您，但是我相信您现在正被虚伪的奉承所影响。科迪莉亚对陛下的爱是无可置疑的。

李尔：肯特，你若想活命的话，就别再讲了。

肯特：我必须讲清楚，我的陛下。我宁愿丢掉性命也不愿意看到您犯下如此严重的错误。您错误地让您我您的女儿之间产生摩擦。我料想这种行为会在您的王国里造成巨大的冲突。

李尔：你竟敢反对我。从我面前滚出去。收拾好你的东西，滚出我的王国。五天之内你若没有离开我的国土，我就叫人杀了你。

第三部分

旁白：当贡纳莉从她父亲那里得到所能得的一切后，马上开始粗鲁地对待他。当李尔想跟她谈一谈时，贡纳莉叫她的仆人奥斯瓦尔德说她病了。她怂恿下属对李尔不敬，并开始抱怨李尔所带的百名卫兵。然而，李尔王旁边很快就有了一位朋友。被李尔勒令离开不列颠寻求一份差使。

（李尔、数名卫兵以及假扮作仆人的肯特上场。）

李尔：好的，凯厄斯，我将考验你一下。如果你能证明你擅长你的差使，我会留你作我的仆人。

（奥斯瓦尔德上场）嗨，叫你。我女儿在什么地方？（奥斯瓦尔德不理睬李尔王，匆忙走出房间。）嗨，怎么搞的？叫他回来。他聋了吗？（一名卫兵追着奥斯瓦尔德冲了出去。）好像整个

世界都睡着了。（卫兵重新上场。）那个仆人哪儿去了？我叫他，他为什么不回来？

卫兵：陛下，他很粗鲁地回答我，说他不愿意回来。

李尔：我不相信！

卫兵：陛下，我很难过地告诉您，您在这儿似乎没有得到一个国王应有的尊敬。这儿的每个人，包括您的女儿，对您都很冷淡。

李尔：嗯。我也这样怀疑过，但我一直地对自己说，这只是我的想象罢了。请告诉我的女儿我希望同她谈一谈。（卫兵鞠躬，离开。奥斯瓦尔德上场。）啊，伙计，过来回答我的问题。我是谁？

奥斯瓦尔德：女主人的父亲。

李尔：女主人的父亲？我在你眼里就是这个样子？狗奴才！（李尔抬起胳膊似乎要去打奥斯瓦尔德。）

奥斯瓦尔德：我可不会挨打的，我的老爷。

肯特：（肯特从下面将奥斯瓦尔德的双腿踢倒。）我想你也不会四脚朝天地躺下。站起来，从这儿滚出去。（奥斯瓦尔德下。）

李尔：多谢了，凯厄斯。我看出来你将会是个最有用的仆人。（贡纳莉上。）怎么啦，女儿？近来你似乎总是皱着眉头。

贡纳莉：我皱眉有什么好奇怪的？你的卫兵老是酗酒斗殴。我本来以为告诉你他们的行径之后，你会纠正他们的。但现在我倒听说你辱骂了奥斯瓦尔德。我真的相信你是在纵容你的那些举止不良的卫兵。

李尔：这难道是我的女儿在斥责我吗？

贡纳莉：我烦透了你的士兵了。保留他们很费钱，而且你也不需要他们。此外，他们醉醺醺的举止和不礼貌的行为让人感到恶心。你要把他们遣送一半。你要是不想让我把剩下的士兵也赶走的话，我说你还是教教他们遵守规矩的好。

李尔：一派谎言。我的卫兵们很优秀，他们知道怎样举止得当。我不想呆在这里受辱。我还有一个女儿。她若知道你是如何待我的，她一定会把你的眼珠子抠出来的。伙计们！把马备好，收拾好行李，我马上就走。我不想呆在不受欢迎的地方。（李尔和随从下。）

旁白：李尔派肯特提前赶赴二女儿里根的城堡，通知她他很快就会到达。贡纳莉也派奥斯瓦尔德奔往里根处，告诉里根她这边的说法。

第三单元 为了所有人的公正

下文选自玛丽安·琼斯的日记，她是一位黑人妇女，住在密西西比州的蒙哥马利市。

民权运动的开端

1955年12月4日 星期日

今天我们去教堂，牧师马丁·路德·金宣布：从明天开始抵制公交车和无轨电车。我一向痛恨必须坐在公交车最差的座位上，所以我很高兴支持这项举动。金博士鼓励我们同这个禁止我们黑人随意就坐的不公平的制度作斗争。如果我们坐在公交车前面的座位上，就会被认为是违规了，如果我们不遵守这项法律，我们会遭到严惩。但说起来我很高兴，在星期四，这种根据肤色的不公平的种族隔离受到了挑战。一位名叫罗莎·帕克斯的黑人女士上了一辆城市公交车，她同其他三位黑人坐在第五排。专供白人坐的座位渐渐地坐满了人，直到有一个白人男子一直站着。根据法律，他不能同罗莎坐在一起，而且根据传统习惯，黑人要让出座位。四个人都被要求站起来。另外三个人屈从了，而罗莎不愿意这样做，也拒绝站起来。她被捕了。她太

勇敢了！我不太肯定自己是否有足够的勇气像她那样拒绝让座。

金和蒙哥马利市的其他黑人领袖抓住这起事件，决定用抗争的方式来改变这项法律。他们满怀信心，如果全体黑人都支持他们，他们可以通过谈判而赢得一个较为公平的局面。但是，我实在担心明天会发生什么。会是一片混乱吗？

1955年12月5日

今天早晨我哈欠连连，因为我比往常醒得还要早，但是我妹妹塞雷娜已经起床了。她催促我快点穿衣服，穿上最舒适的便鞋。我马上从床上跳了下来。我是喜欢准时上班的，抵制公交车不会使我迟到。碰巧的是，当我们到达空荡荡的公交车站时，一辆公交车过来了，但我们未加理睬。通常情况下，我们只会欣喜若狂，因为这会保证我们全程都有座位。但今天不同了！当我们这些步行者在人行道上行进时，满载乘客的出租车从我们身边驶了过去。车上的人向我们挥手，我们向他们致意。而另一方面，白人们大声咒骂我们。我们感觉到了他们的敌意，但这只会使我们的决心更加坚定。庆幸的是，就在我感到再也走不动的时候，一位黑人出租车司机让我们搭了一段车。这似乎像是对祈祷的回报！最终没有任何混乱，我甚至按时上了班！

抵制运动非常成功地持续了一年。玛丽安·琼斯已习惯于不乘公交车而步行去上班。然而，白人们的敌意也在不断上升。

1956年1月25日

太激动了！塞雷娜回家说，结束抵制的消息明天将会登上所有的报纸。我急于想知道结果。“这不是真的。”她对我大声嚷道：“这只是白人编的故事，想叫我们停止运动。对他们来说，我们太成功了。马丁·路德·金亲自来告诉我，这只是一个诡计。我们必须坚持下去，直到获胜。”我从未看到她那样生气过，所以我保持沉默。或许现在白人的商店正在遭受损失，因为我们再也不到市区去购物了。但这肯定意味着我们正在获胜。我不在乎明天双脚疲惫。我寻思着，他们会不会再耍其它花招？

他们真的那样干了。马丁·路德·金和其他领袖的房屋遭到了炸弹袭击。但这并未使抵制停下来。这些黑人领袖受到了最高法院一项裁决的鼓舞，这项裁决规定全国范围内的公共教育必须要实施不同种族混校。于是，他们上法院据理力争，反对公交车上的种族隔离。直到1956年11月13日，美国最高法院才判定公交车上的种族隔离不符合宪法。

1956年11月13日

今天真是值得纪念的一天！在法庭上，我们赢得了民权斗争中的一场根本性的胜利。如果黑人学生和白人学生现在必须在一起接受教育的话，那么为什么在公交车上人们就应该根据肤色来就座呢？最高法院认为这是错误的，所以从今往后我们将可以在公交车上坐我们喜欢坐的地方。我感到无比欢欣鼓舞！我们也许为自由仅仅进行了一次小的斗争，但谁能知道这一斗争会将我们引向何方呢？

玛丽安·琼斯说对了。蒙哥马利市抵制公交车的成功开启了民权运动的先声，而民权运动带来了全美国的黑人在教育、住房、工作、投票选举和旅馆等方面状况的改善。

“我有一个梦想”

我有一个梦想，那就是有一天这个国家会站起，并实现其信条的真谛：“我们认为这些真理是不言而喻的：人人生而平等。”

我有一个梦想，那就是有一天在佐治亚的红色山冈上，昔日奴隶的儿子将能够和昔日奴隶主的儿子同席而坐，共叙兄弟情谊。

我有一个梦想，那就是有一天甚至密西西比州（这是黑人难以寻觅到正义的一个州）也将变成自由和正义的绿洲。

我有一个梦想，那就是有一天我的四个孩子将在一个不是以他们的肤色，而是以他们的品格优劣来评价他们的国度里生活。

我有一个梦想，那就是有一天甚至在白人极端排斥黑人的阿拉巴马州……，就在那里黑人儿童将能与白人儿童情同骨肉，携手并进。

……

这就是我们的希望。这就是我返回南方所带的信念回到。带着这种信念，我们就能够从绝望之山上切下一块希望之石。带着这种信念，我们就能够把我们的国家中令人不快的声音变成一曲优美的兄弟情谊交响乐。带着这种信念，我们就能够一起工作、一起祈祷、一起斗争、一起坐牢、一起捍卫自由，我们知道终有一天我们将会获得自由。这将会是这样的日子，在这一天里所有上帝的儿女将能够以全新的意义歌唱“我的祖国，甜蜜的自由之邦——为了你，我歌唱。我父亲长眠的土地，从每座山上，让自由回荡！”

如果美国要成为一个伟大的国家，这必须成为现实。所以让自由回荡……

让自由回荡。当这实现时，当我们让自由回荡时——当我们让自由之声响彻于每座大小村庄，响彻于每个州和每个城市时，我们将会加速那一天的到来。那时上帝所有的儿女，不管是黑人还是白人，犹太人还是非犹太人，新教徒还是天主教徒，都将携手同唱那首古老的黑人圣歌：“终于自由啦！终于自由啦！感谢全能的上帝，我们终于自由啦！”

…

第四单元

如何成为一名成功的阅读者

1. 熟能生巧。

大多数人认为努力改进技能的最佳方式就是实践、实践、再实践。这同样适用于进行体育运动、当一名优秀的音乐家、画家或者医生。当然，人的天赋对取得重要成就也发挥作用，但是学会运用恰当的技巧，然后再加以实践将会提高人的工作成绩。

2. 让阅读训练趣味化。

上述原则同样适用于能力强的读者。有某些技巧可供你学习，然后全靠自己去练习、练习、再练习了。选择阅读训练的课文不应太难，否则的话，很快就会产生受挫感并觉得乏味。检测一篇课文是否难度适中的一种方法是阅读该课文的第一页。如果生词比例高于 3%，这篇课文读起来就不会轻松，所以很可能你不会喜欢它。

如果课文主题让你感兴趣，或者你相信它有用，这时阅读也将更加有趣。例如，假设在生物学中，你正在研究植物如何繁衍，那你会去因特网上找到有关这方面的英语文章。那样的话你就一方面在练习英语阅读，同时也在学习生物了。

3. 学习优秀阅读者的技巧。

如果你想当一名跳高冠军，然而你的跳高技巧完全不正确，这样即使你练习了很长时间，很可能你永远也不会跳出好成绩。阅读也同样如此。一些阅读方法比其它方法更加有效，所以使用与优秀读者相同的技巧是一个好办法。以下讨论优秀读者的一些技巧。

(1) 仔细阅读之前，优秀读者预习课文。在阅读之前，如果对文章的主题或结构有所了解的话，理解这篇文章将会容易得多。这也是本书为什么许多阅读课文前有读前活动的原因。有些读前活动要求你回忆与主题有关的知识，有些教你几个将在课文中出现的生词，有些要求你浏览一下课文的组织结构。当没有读前问题时，优秀的读者会自问如下这些问题：

- 课文的标题是什么？
- 小标题/插图/图表/图片说明文字可以告诉我课文的什么内容？
- 课文将要谈论什么？
- 关于这个话题我已经知道些什么？

(2) 优秀阅读者积极主动而非消极被动地阅读。阅读的时候，优秀的读者会思考文章的内容，并在脑海里提问或发表评论。例如：

- 太有意思了/太重要了！
- 我竟然不知道！那是什么意思？
- 我不同意那种看法。
- 是的，我在另一本书中读过同样的东西。
- 我想知道作者接下来会说些什么。

(3) 优秀阅读者根据阅读的目的采用不同的方法阅读。想一想用母语阅读不同类型的文章时你所采用的方式吧。诚如弗朗西斯·培根曾经所说的那样：“有些书籍只须浅尝，有些可以吞咽，只有少数需要咀嚼，慢慢消化。”为了某些目的，你有必要逐词阅读文章。至于其他任务，像查找某些事实之类，你可以快速阅读。只有看到与你的任务相关的句子时，你才放慢速度仔细阅读。如果你记住阅读的目的，并且以帮你实现该目的的最佳方式进行阅读，那么你的阅读将会更加有效。

(4) 优秀读者不必懂得课文中的每一个词。阅读下面方框中的句子，然后看看这些句子下面的问题你能回答出多少。在本阶段不要查阅不认识的单词或词组。

汤姆从树上摘了一个 **tamrillo**(新西兰番茄)，把它切成两半，舀出 **pulp**(果瓢)，他尝了一下，发现味道很鲜美。

- 1 汤姆喜欢 **tamarillos** 吗？
- 2 吃之前一定要把它煮一下吗？
- 3 **tamarillos** 是一种什么样的食物？

由于你阅读这些句子的目的是回答这些问题，所以即使你很可能不知道“**pulp**”或者“**tamarillo**”是什么意思，你还是可以达到你的目的。然而，通过上下文你可以猜测 **tamarillo** 是一种水果，而且它的 **pulp** 是很好吃的东西。

4. 小结

我们都可以提高看书的阅读能力。全部的要求就是运用恰当的技巧大量练习。知道运用何种技巧的一种

方法就是研究优秀阅读者所使用的方法，然后在自己的阅读中加以采纳。很快你就会提高阅读技能，有助于你开始各项阅读活动。

如何才能学得最好？

通过以下检测弄清你是哪种类型的学习者。只对你认为同你情况相似的句子打勾。

1. 我宁愿听磁带朗读而不愿看书。
2. 做课时，我喜欢边做边有背景音乐陪伴。
3. 购物时，我宁愿依赖购物清单而不是凭自己的记忆买东西。
4. 我喜欢参加体育运动胜过观看运动。
5. 对我而言，保持我的房间和书桌整洁是件费劲的事。
6. 我知晓所听歌曲的大部分歌词。
7. 在读或听的时候，我往往会在脑海中看到图像。
8. 比起听故事，我更喜欢读故事。
9. 拼单词时，我尝试在脑海中“看见”这些单词。
10. 我喜欢通过电话交谈。
11. 我喜欢动手制作东西。
12. 打电话时，我经常画些东西。
13. 我说的时候比写的时候更能容易地表达自己的思想。
14. 当附近有很多人在交谈时，我感到难以集中注意力。

15. 我喜欢按照地图而不是书面或口头指示（找到目的地）
16. 我通常知道我想说什么，但是用语言表达出来有困难。
17. 我尽可能少看书。
18. 当我记起过去发生的某件事时，我通常在脑海中看到它的图像。
19. 当有人向我解释某件事时，这时我学得最好。
20. 当有人在我附近走动，或者东西十分凌乱时，我感到难以集中注意力。
21. 当拼读难的单词时，我经常把这些词写下来，年年它们是不是“看起来正确”。
22. 如果长时间坐着并集中注意力于某事，我会感到厌倦。我喜欢不断变换活动。
23. 我通常记住人们的姓名，但经常忘记他们的面貌。
24. 我通常记住人们的面貌，但经常对他们的姓名模糊不清。
25. 如果我把清单上的东西对自己诉说一遍就记得最牢。
26. 我喜欢别人给我示范做什么，而不是告诉我做什么。
27. 当我给指示时，一讲话我就有晃动身体和（或）手的倾向。
28. 当拼读难的单词时，我经常一边把它们读出来一边把它们写下来。
29. 比起音乐来，我更喜欢美术。
30. 我喜欢阅读。
31. 当我试图解决一个问题时，我喜欢咨询别人。
32. 当我在学习拼读单词时，我把单词一遍又一遍地写下来，直到掌握为止。

现在根据下面的指示来看一看你是哪种类型的学习者。

在表格中，把跟你已打勾句子相搭配的数字划上圈，然后把每一竖行中的圆圈数目相加。

圆圈数目最多的竖行很有可能是你最喜欢的学习风格。你或许会发现自己有不只一种倾向的学习风格，这是一种意外的收获，因为能够以多种风格学习会增大找到合适的学习活动的机会。

现在翻到下页看看你如何学得更好。

请阅读下面对三种类型学习者的描述。

视觉型学习者：当这类学习者能够看见或注视某事物时，他们学得最好。他们喜欢阅读或观看图画和图表。

听觉型学习者：当学习材料有口头成分时，这类学习者学得最好。他们喜欢听解释或指示，而不喜欢阅读。

触觉型学习者：当这类学习者通过具体的体验可以学得最好；也就是说，当他们可以摸到或感觉到真实物体时、做实验或者制作东西时，他们学得最好。

视觉	听觉	触觉
3	1	4
7	2	5
8	6	10
9	10	11
15	13	12
18	14	16
20	19	17
24	23	21
26	25	22
29	28	27
30	31	32

第五单元

19 世纪英国女作家的崛起

你相信从前社会存在着反对女子写小说的舆论吗？很显然，这种限制在妇女没有平等权利的时期肯定会起作用的。或许你会认为这种类型的歧视只会在很久以前才有影响，因为这毕竟是一种很落伍的想法。但是你弄错了，因为在英国仅仅一百年前，这还是一种被普通接受观念。即便如此，事情发展还是有所转折。在一种奇怪的矛盾状况下，这段时期却产生了五位最具有勇气和才华的女作家。绕过对女子写小说的限制的人有：简·奥斯汀、勃朗特三姐妹（夏洛蒂、艾米莉和安妮），以及人们称之为乔治·艾略特的作家。

简·奥斯汀(1775—1817)是这些伟大的女作家中的第一位。她创作了六部完整的小说，这些作品都涉及到女性选择权的问题及其局限性。那时女性唯一受到尊重的事业就是嫁人。所以她作品中的女主人公也为了无爱情的婚姻所困扰。她最受欢迎的小説一直是《傲慢与偏见》。在这部小说中，我们跟踪书中五姐妹的生活轨迹，看到她们克服幸福和婚姻中的种种障碍，直至一切问题都圆满解决。然而，简的作品引人入胜之处不仅仅在于故事内容本身，还在于她那种清新明快而又带点讽刺的写作风格，这从小说的第一句就可以很清楚地看出来：

“众所周知，凡是有财产的单身汉必定需要娶一位太太。”

作为读者同，我们知道这句话并不完全真实，然而它却代表着所有有女儿要出嫁的母亲们的观点。这句话就是在调侃那些母亲，因为她们一门心思要女儿嫁个好人家。

在简奥斯汀之后，女作家们发现用真名出版小说更加无望。所以，她们选择使用男人的姓名来出版自己的作品。勃朗特三姐妹采用了这种做法，玛丽·安·埃文斯也同样如此，她用乔治·艾略特作为笔名进行创作。生性多疑的评论家们没有看穿这层伪装，而且对她们的作品大加赞扬。

夏洛蒂·勃朗特(1816—1855)是勃朗特姐妹中最出名的一个。她的小说具有革命性，因为她的小说用鲜明的笔调描述了女性与其受社会限制的角色之间的对抗。她的作品中的女主人公们坦率地表达自己的感情，而与此同时，她们的选择也显示出真诚和良知。她最有名的小说《简·爱》所描绘的女主人公从童年的不幸、贫穷且饱受摧残到成熟，她经历多种坎坷和失望，最后终于找到了幸福。《简·爱》一出版，立即被誉为“伟大天才的杰作”，获得了巨大的成功。同简·奥斯汀小说中表达的那种较为含蓄的感情相比，《简·爱》算是一种直接表露。

在这一阶段的第五位女作家是乔治·艾略特(1819—1880)。她的小说探讨了人们在生活中为了取得成功在道德上所作的模糊的退让。在她的一部名为《织工马南》的小说中，男主人公发现了一个小姑娘，并带她回家与自己共同生活。小姑娘自己的父亲已经丢弃了她，因为如果他认自己的女儿的话，他害怕会失去第二个妻子对他的爱——这是个让这对夫妇都痛苦的错误。

19 世纪被认为是伟大的女作家人才辈出的世纪，这一时期也有一些优秀的男作家。在为此作家中，查尔斯·狄更斯(1812—1870)作为社会不公正问题文学批评家是最为出众的。他的小说描绘了穷人生活的艰辛：他们或者身无分文，或者缺乏赞助人帮助他们铺平道路。在小说《大卫·科波菲尔》中，主人公在遇到怪癖、善良、宽容的姑妈贝特西·特洛伍德之前历经苦难。大卫得益于姑妈那真正慷慨大方的性格，在她的关心下，大卫受到了教育、获得了财富和幸福。今天，查尔斯·狄更斯是公认的 19 世纪伟大的作家之一。尽管他的作品数量上超过了上述任何一位女作家，但是他的影响力并没有超过她们。这些女作家由于创作了具有最高水准的作品，任何关于 19 世纪的英国文学的研究都必须包括她们。

《傲慢与偏见》中的求婚

伊丽莎白·贝内特见到富有而英俊的土地所有者达西先生时，由于他态度傲慢，加之举止无礼，她几乎立刻就讨厌起他了。当伊丽莎白在达西姑妈家再次碰到他时，他向她求婚，伊丽莎白特别惊讶。

几分钟后，达西激动得气喘吁吁地向她走来。“我怎么挣扎都不行，不管用！你得允许我告诉你我是多么敬慕你、多么爱你。”伊丽莎白大吃一惊，一言不发地盯着他。这是一个信号，示意他继续讲下去。他言辞流利、语气热烈，但主要是说她低下的社会地位，听起来可不像要做她的丈夫。

起初，虽然不喜欢他，她并没有漠视他的爱，而且还很在意拒绝他的求婚会给他带来的痛苦。然而，当他以那种傲慢的方式继续讲下去时，她就忘记了他的感受。他结束时希望她能接受他的求婚。他谈到了自己的焦虑，但是从他的面部表情来看，很显然他对她的答复很有把握。他讲完后，她回答道：“很抱歉，先生。我不会嫁给你的。”

听她这样说，达西先生极为惊讶，他竭力控制自己的面部表情。这种停顿是很可怕的。终于，他问道：“这就是我要得到的全部答复！也许我可以问一下，为什么我会被如此断然地拒绝？”“我也可以问一句，”她答道：“为什么你对我说你是违心地喜欢我？不过，还有其他一些事！你想一想，一个毁了我亲爱的姐姐幸福的人，我会接受他吗？”

听到这些话，达西先生的脸色变了，不过他还是在听她说。“我有足够的理由对你怀有恶感。你无法抵赖你反对过我姐姐同你朋友的婚事，”她重复道。他假装镇静地回答道：“我尽自己所能，用各种办法来拆散我的朋友和你的姐姐，而且我对自己的成功感到高兴。”“但这不是我讨厌你的唯一理由，”她继续说道，“很久以前，威克汉姆先生告诉了我他的苦处，我对你就有了初步的印象。”

“你对那位先生的事特别感兴趣，”达西说话不那么镇定了。

“谁不会同情他的苦处？”

“他的苦处，”达西生气地重复道，“确实太大啦。”

“因为你他才穷困潦倒。他很无辜，而你却极不厚道地对待他的苦处。”伊丽莎白答道。

“而这，”达西大声嚷道，同时快速走向房间另一头，“就是你对我的印象！感谢你如此直言不讳。我的毛病确实很多！但是，或许，”他停下来转向她，补充说道：“如果我的坦诚相告没有伤及你的高傲，如果我阿谀奉承你，事情可能就会完全不同了。对我述说的感情我并不感到羞耻，因为这些是自然的和恰当的。难道你指望我会为有那些生活状况远比我差的亲戚而感到庆幸吗？”

伊丽莎白觉得自己越来越生气。“你弄错了，达西先生。当你向我求婚时，你的粗鲁帮了我的忙。如果你的举止更像一个绅士的话，在拒绝你时，我可能会感到不自在，而现在这省掉了我的一切不自在。”

他礼貌地但却冷冰冰地回答道：“女士，您说的够多的了。请原谅我占用您如此多的时间，也请接受我对您健康和幸福的最美好的祝愿。”讲完这些话，他匆匆地离开了房间。